

- VOLUME D -

IN THE UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT

IN AND FOR THE DISTRICT OF DELAWARE

PHARMACYCLICS LLC and : CIVIL ACTION  
JANSSEN BIOTECH, INC., :

Plaintiffs, :

vs. :

CIPLA LIMIGTED, et al., :

Defendants. : NO. 18-192 (CFC)

----- :  
PHARMACYCLICS LLC and : CIVIL ACTION  
JANSSEN BIOTECH, INC., :

Plaintiffs, :

vs. :

ALVOGEN PINE BROOK LLC and :  
NATCO PHARMA, :

Defendants. : NO. 18-275 (CFC)

- - -

Wilmington, Delaware  
Friday, October 16, 2020  
8:30 o'clock, a.m.

- - -

BEFORE: HONORABLE COLM F. CONNOLLY, U.S.D.C.J.

- - -

Valerie J. Gunning  
Official Court Reporter

1     **APPEARANCES:**

2  
3           **MORRIS, NICHOLS, ARSHT & TUNNELL LLP**  
4           **BY:   JACK B. BLUMENFELD, ESQ. and**  
5           **JEREMY A. TIGAN, ESQ.**

6  
7                   **Counsel for Plaintiffs**

8           **COVINGTON & BURLING LLP**  
9           **BY:   CHRISTOPHER SIPES, ESQ.,**  
10           **ERICA N. ANDERSEN, ESQ.,**  
11           **ALEXA HANSEN, ESQ.**  
12           **BRIANNE BHARKHDA, ESQ. and**  
13           **CHANSON CHANG, ESQ.**  
14           **(Washington, D.C.)**

15                   **Counsel for Plaintiff**  
16                   **Pharmacyclics LLC**

17           **KRAMER LEVIN NAFTALIS & FRANKEL**  
18           **BY:   IRENA ROYZMAN, ESQ.**  
19           **(New York, New York)**

20                   **Counsel for Plaintiff**  
21                   **Janssen Biotech, Inc.**

22           **HEYMAN ENERIO GATTUSO & HIRZEL LLP**  
23           **BY:   DOMINICK T. GATTUSO, ESQ.**

24  
25                   **-and-**

1 APPEARANCES (Continued):

2

3 ALSTON & BIRD

4 BY: NATALIE CLAYTON, ESQ. and  
(New York, New York)

5

6 -and-

7 ALSTON & BIRD

8 BY: SHRI ABHYANKAR, ESQ.  
(Atlanta, Georgia)

9

10 Counsel for Defendants

Sandoz Inc. and Lek Pharmaceuticals d.d.i

11

12

13 YOUNG CONAWAY STARGATT & TAYLOR LLP.

14 BY: MELANIE SHARP, ESQ.

15

16 -and-

17

18 PROSKAUER ROSE

19 BY: SIEGMUND Y. GUTMAN, ESQ. and  
20 DAVID MICHAEL HANNA, ESQ.  
(Los Angeles, California)

21

22 Counsel for Defendants.

23 Alvogen Pine Brook LLC and Natco Pharma  
24 Ltd.

25

- - -

## P R O C E E D I N G S

(Proceedings commenced in the courtroom  
beginning at 8:30 a.m.)

THE COURT: All right. Good morning, everyone.

MS. ANDERSEN: Good morning.

THE COURT: I guess, Ms. Clayton, are you up  
first?

MS. CLAYTON: Yes, Your Honor. You asked us to  
confer on exhibits last night, so we have agreed upon them,  
ready to enter. I don't know if you want to do that now or  
later in the day?

THE COURT: Why don't we go ahead and do it now  
before we forget to take care of it.

MS. CLAYTON: For Dr. Steed, the exhibits the  
parties agreed were entered into evidence are DTX-1352,  
JTX-0322, JTX-1, DTX-2232, JTX-41, JTX-34, JTX-13, JTX-57,  
JTX-58, JTX-56, DTX-1307, DTX-1308, JTX-53, DTX-1304,  
DTX-2430, JTX-573, PTX-147 and JTX-506.

THE COURT: That's all agreed to?

MS. CLAYTON: Yes.

THE COURT: Go ahead.

MS. CLAYTON: For Mr. Goldman's deposition, the  
admitted exhibits are JTX-8, JTX-66, JTX-557, JTX-68,

1 JTX-551, JTX-69, JTX-73 and DTX-264. I thought they had  
2 agreed. I was told they have not formally responded yet.

3 THE COURT: Okay.

4 MS. BHARKHDA: I think we were still checking,  
5 because I believe Ms. Clayton may have missed, I believe,  
6 507 was -- JTX- -- 506?

7 MS. CLAYTON: That was the last one I said.

8 MS. BHARKHDA: I'm sorry. I believe that's  
9 right. We will note for the record whether that's incorrect  
10 later in the day. I apologize. We were still checking.

11 THE COURT: All right.

12 MS. CLAYTON: For Ms. Dailey, it was just four  
13 exhibits, DTX-1266, DTX-1263, DTX-79 and DTX-1230.

14 MS. BHARKHDA: Your Honor, I don't believe  
15 that's correct. We only have three exhibits for Ms. Dailey.  
16 If you can let me pull it up. Not 1230.

17 MS. CLAYTON: 1230, Your Honor, is the actual  
18 deposition transcript.

19 MS. BHARKHDA: Your Honor, we don't think it's  
20 appropriate to enter the deposition transcript because we  
21 have clip reports. An entire deposition transcript, we have  
22 a general practice of entering those in the case. The  
23 deposition clips that were played will be in the record, but  
24 there's no cause for entering the entire deposition  
25 transcript.

1 THE COURT: Well, I do think we should have the  
2 transcript that was played.

3 MS. BHARKHDA: Correct.

4 THE COURT: We should not have any transcript  
5 for speaking that was not actually introduced in trial.

6 MS. CLAYTON: Understood, Your Honor. We  
7 misunderstood what the Court wanted in that record, so we  
8 can enter -- we will substitute those for, I guess, the clip  
9 reports or we could just excerpt the full transcript,  
10 whatever the Court finds easier to read.

11 THE COURT: I don't know what clip reports are.  
12 I just need a transcript, and, in fact, going forward, I  
13 also want a notebook. Ideally, I would have a notebook in  
14 front of me while the deposition is being played so I can  
15 read through that if you wanted going forward.

16 MS. CLAYTON: Yes.

17 THE COURT: That's what needs to be put in the  
18 record.

19 MS. CLAYTON: Okay. We'll come into agreement  
20 on the excerpts to the transcript for DTX-264 and DTX-1230  
21 that should come in the record and were played at trial and  
22 resubmit that to the Court.

23 THE COURT: Right. Okay.

24 MS. BHARKHDA: Your Honor, I believe there were  
25 some left off from Mr. Goldman as well. DTX-264, DTX-67,

1 DTX-546 and JTX-1.

2 MS. CLAYTON: No objection, Your Honor.

3 THE COURT: All right. Does that take care of  
4 all of the exhibits from yesterday?

5 MS. BHARKHDA: I think we're still conferring on  
6 Mr. Steed to make sure our list aligns with defendants'.

7 THE COURT: All right.

8 MS. CLAYTON: I believe Alvogen had some  
9 exhibits to enter from Dr. Swift. Is that right?

10 THE COURT: Let's do that.

11 MR. GUTMAN: Yes Your Honor. We conferred with  
12 plaintiffs and have an agreement regarding the exhibits.  
13 We're getting those printed out currently that were agreed  
14 upon. Perhaps just before the next break we can move those  
15 into evidence.

16 THE COURT: That sounds good.

17 MR. GUTMAN: Your Honor.

18 THE COURT: All right. Any other housekeeping  
19 before we start? No? Okay. Who is next then?

20 MS. CLAYTON: Your Honor, we're going to play  
21 two more deposition clips this morning. The first is Dr.  
22 Smyth.

23 I believe plaintiffs have the same objection to  
24 Dr. Smyth as they did for Mr. Goldman yesterday, but I hope  
25 we can come to the same resolution, because they're just

1 inventorship. We can discuss at a later date the issue  
2 plaintiffs have related to their argument, which we disagree  
3 with, that the theory was late.

4 MS. BHARKHDA: Correct, Your Honor. We have the  
5 same objection with respect to the inventorship theory.  
6 With respect to both Mr. Smyth and Mr. Wirth whose  
7 depositions will be played this morning, we have no problem  
8 with the proposal that we reserve our objection now and we  
9 can proceed with playing the clips and save the objections  
10 for later.

11 THE COURT: All right. We'll do that. Hold on  
12 one second.

13 MS. CLAYTON: Your Honor, I believe you should  
14 have a binder with Dr. Smyth's transcript in it that we had  
15 delivered to the Court. There should be a clip report, Your  
16 Honor, in the pocket of the portions we're going to play.

17 THE COURT: Sounds good. Thank you very much.

18 Ms. Bharkhda, did you have anything else you  
19 want to add?

20 MS. BHARKHDA: I don't believe so.

21 MS. CLAYTON: Your Honor, at this time  
22 defendants will play the deposition of Dr. Mark Smyth. He  
23 is a named inventor on both the '548 and the '231 patents.

24 He was deposed by defendants on November 21st,  
25 2019, at which time he was employed by Pharmacyclics.



## Smyth - deposition designations

1           You will hear 57 minutes and 24 second of his  
2 deposition testimony. Thirty minutes and 48 second will be  
3 charged to defendant and 26 minutes and 36 seconds will be  
4 charged to plaintiff.

5           MR. ABHYANKAR: And, again, Your Honor, this  
6 would be for the inventor of the '455 patent as well.

7           THE COURT: Okay. Off the record.

8           (Discussion held off the record.)

9           THE COURT: We're back the on record. Let's  
10 play the deposition. Thank you.

11           (The videotaped deposition of Dr. Mark Smyth was  
12 played as follows.)

13           "Question: Good morning, Dr. Smyth.

14           My name is Jayita Guhaniyogi, and I am from the  
15 Kasowitz firm. I represent the Zydus defendants in this  
16 case and I will be asking you some questions today followed  
17 by -- some of my co-counsel might ask you some questions  
18 later.

19           "Could you please state your full name for the  
20 record?

21           "Answer: Mark Steven Smyth.

22           "Question: Who is your current employer?

23           "Answer: Pharmacyclics.

24           "Question: If you start with -- in 1984 you  
25 received a bachelor's degree in chemistry from Indiana

1 University of Pennsylvania; correct?

2 "Answer: Correct.

3 "Question: That degree -- that was chemistry;  
4 correct?

5 "Answer: Yes.

6 "Question: After your bachelor's degree,  
7 according to your C.V., Exhibit 2, you received a Ph.D in  
8 1989 in synthetic organic chemistry from the State  
9 University at New York at Buffalo; correct?

10 "Answer: Yes.

11 "Question: After 2007, after you left  
12 Proteolix, you joined Pharmacyclics; is that correct? In  
13 2007?

14 "Answer: Yes. Correct.

15 "Question: What month was that? Do you recall?

16 "Answer: November 2007.

17 "Question: Okay. When you joined Pharmacyclics  
18 in November 2007, you joined as a principal scientist in the  
19 process chemistry department of Pharmacyclics; is that  
20 correct?

21 "Answer: Correct.

22 "Question: What was your role when you joined  
23 as a principal scientist in process chemistry at  
24 Pharmacyclics?

25 "Answer: I was responsible for all technical

Smyth - deposition designations

1 aspects of the ongoing development projects; so I was lead  
2 scientist.

3 "Question: What type of development projects  
4 that you were involved in when you joined as the principal  
5 scientist?

6 "Answer: We were working on chemical  
7 development of a factor VIIa inhibitor, the protease  
8 tyrosine kinase inhibitor, and the h-stack inhibitor  
9 programs.

10 "Question: When you say that you were  
11 responsible for all technical aspects of the ongoing  
12 development projects, what do you mean by all technical  
13 aspects?

14 "Answer? I was responsible for all the  
15 chemistry activities related to those programs -- from lab  
16 work, up through manufacturing.

17 "Question: Okay. As part of your role as the  
18 project leader, were you involved as a polymorph analysis at  
19 Pharmacyclics?

20 "Answer: Yes.

21 "Question: What did that involve?

22 "Answer: Can you be more specific, please?

23 "Question: What did your role in polymorph  
24 analysis involve when you were project leader at -- when you  
25 were principal scientist at Pharmacyclics?

Smyth - deposition designations

1           "Answer: I was responsible for setting up and  
2 leading the technical interactions with a third party --  
3 with the CMO that we had worked with and then, also, with a  
4 third party analysis lab.

5           "Question: Did anybody in your team in  
6 Pharmacyclics run polymorph analysis?

7           "Answer: Not in-house, no.

8           "Question: Okay. You were collaborating with  
9 the third party, the manufacturing -- the contract  
10 manufacturer and the third-party analysis lab; correct? On  
11 polymorph analysis?

12           "Answer: I was working with the two parties.  
13 Yes.

14           "Question: You were reviewing their reports; is  
15 that correct?

16           "Answer: Yes.

17           "Question: When you joined Pharmacyclics in  
18 2007, as part of the BTK project, did that involve the  
19 ibrutinib project?

20           "Answer: Yes.

21           "Question: The involvement you had with the  
22 third party contract manufacturing organization and the  
23 third-party analysis lab at that time you were a principal  
24 scientist when you signed Pharmacyclics -- can you elaborate  
25 on your role on that collaboration on polymorphic analysis?

Smyth - deposition designations

1           "Answer: My role was to identify and set up a  
2           collaboration with an external party to perform analysis of  
3           materials we had generated, as well as to conduct additional  
4           studies for further understanding of the solid state  
5           properties of the materials we were preparing.

6           "Question: When you say your role was to  
7           identify, were you involved in the identification of the  
8           third party analysis lab who were involved in the polymorph  
9           analysis of the projects that you were working on at that  
10          time?

11          "Answer: Yes.

12          "Question: When you were promoted between 2010  
13          and 2012, according to your C.V. Exhibit 2, you were  
14          promoted to director of process development and  
15          manufacturing at Pharmacyclics; correct?

16          "Answer: Correct.

17          "Question: How did your role change at that  
18          time?

19          "Answer: I had -- I continued on as the  
20          technical lead on all the programs we were working on, as  
21          well as I had hired a couple of process chemists that I was  
22          in charge of their day to day operational functions.

23          "Question: Progressing to when you -- in 2012,  
24          according to your C.V., you got promoted to a senior  
25          director of process development and manufacturing at

Smyth - deposition designations

1       Pharmacyclics between 2012 and 2014; is that right?

2               "Answer:   Yes.

3               "Question:   How did your role change when you  
4       became senior director of process development and  
5       manufacturing?

6               "Answer:   Increased responsibilities for  
7       external activities of manufacturing of API.

8               "Question:   Did that role involve polymorph  
9       analysis of the API -- of API that you were involved in?

10              "Answer:   Yes, it included that.

11              "Question:   Were you involved in any  
12       collaboration with third-party analysis labs on polymorph  
13       analysis?

14              "Answer:   Yes.

15              "Question:   Did anybody on your team perform  
16       polymorph analysis at Pharmacyclics?

17              "Answer:   No.

18              "Question:   Okay.   Focusing on particularly your  
19       work on ibrutinib projects -- ibrutinib, i-b-r-u-t-i-n-i-b,  
20       I think you said earlier that when you joined Pharmacyclics  
21       in 2007.

22              "Is that when you also started working on the  
23       ibrutinib project?

24              "Answer:   Yes.

25              "Question:   Okay.   November 2007 is when you

Smyth - deposition designations

1 started working on the ibrutinib project?

2 "Answer: Yes.

3 "Question: On that project, particularly on the  
4 ibrutinib project, what were your responsibilities when you  
5 joined as a principal scientist back in 2007 -- November of  
6 2007?

7 "Answer: My job was to take the lead role in  
8 the scientific and technical discussions with our third  
9 party manufacturer who was doing the development work.

10 "Question: What was the name of the third-party  
11 manufacturer at that time you joined?

12 "Answer: Seres Laboratories.

13 "Question: If I refer to Seres, you understand  
14 I am referring to the same third party?

15 "Answer: Yes.

16 "Question: When you joined November 2007, was  
17 Seres also identified and engaged as the third-party  
18 contract manufacturer for Pharmacyclics on ibrutinib?

19 "Answer: Yes.

20 "Question: When did you first get involved with  
21 polymorph analysis of ibrutinib after you joined in  
22 November 2007? Joined Pharmacyclics?

23 "Answer: It was early 2008.

24 "Question: What did that role involving  
25 polymorph analysis of ibrutinib involve when you started the

1 analysis in early 2008?

2 "Answer: Working with the third-party  
3 manufacturer, we had encountered different solid forms and  
4 materials that were behaving differently than what we  
5 expected when he was examining a recrystallization process,  
6 and this led to a realization that -- and the discovery that  
7 we had these different polymorphic forms that needed to have  
8 some analysis performed.

9 "Question: When you say the third-party  
10 manufacturer, you are referring to he was examining a  
11 recrystallization process, who specifically are you  
12 referring to?

13 "Answer: Dr. David Wirth.

14 "Question: Dr. David Wirth was from Seres?

15 "Answer: He worked at Seres, yes.

16 "Question: Was Dr. David Wirth your primary  
17 contact at Seres?

18 "Answer: Yes.

19 "Question: Who directed Dr. David Wirth to  
20 examine the recrystallization process at Seres?

21 "Answer: Me.

22 "Question: I am going to hand you what has been  
23 marked as Smyth Exhibit 3, a document bearing production  
24 numbers, and, Dr. Smyth, by production numbers, I am  
25 referring to these numbers that have been stamped at the



1 bottom of each page on the right-hand side, which we call  
2 Bates numbers:

3 "The production number IMBPCYC05002488 to  
4 IMBPCYC05002482.

5 "Question: Dr. Smyth, do you recognize  
6 Exhibit 3?

7 "Answer: Yes.

8 "Question: If you turn over from the -- on the  
9 first page it says No. 678; correct?

10 "Answer: It says that, yes.

11 "Question: If you turn it over, on the second  
12 page it says assigned to and that is a handwritten name.  
13 Mark S. Smyth; is that right?

14 "Answer: Correct.

15 "Question: That's you; correct?

16 "Answer: Yes.

17 "Question: Does this lab notebook between the  
18 dates that we just went through -- 26 November of 2017 to  
19 April 27, 2010, -- does this time period reflected in the  
20 lab notebook accurately reflect the work that you personally  
21 performed in the lab on the BTK project?"

22 THE COURT: All right. Can we stop for a  
23 second? Can we stop this for a second?

24 I don't see this exhibit in the notebook I have.  
25 Maybe it is, but I'm at a loss to see it.

## Smyth - deposition designations

1 I don't see this exhibit in the notebook that I  
2 have that has been identified as Smyth deposition testimony.  
3 What is the exhibit?

4 MR. ABHYANKAR: Which exhibit is it? One  
5 second, Your Honor. Sorry.

6 (Pause.)

7 MR. ABHYANKAR: Your Honor, I think what  
8 happened is the affirmative designations from defendants,  
9 those are the exhibits we prepared to send to the Court.  
10 This may be an exhibit that was designated by plaintiff in  
11 their counters, but we can try and get that exhibit over to  
12 you as soon as possible.

13 MS. BHARKHDA: Your Honor, I apologize. We  
14 understood the parties that were submitting the binders were  
15 going to include all of the appropriate exhibits, so we will  
16 make sure that you have them. I apologize.

17 THE COURT: Okay.

18 MS. BHARKHDA: We thought the party offering the  
19 testimony was going to include them.

20 THE COURT: How many more exhibits are we  
21 talking about that aren't going to be in the notebook?

22 MR. ABHYANKAR: Your Honor, I will have to check  
23 on that to compare, because I just have the list in front of  
24 me that we identified for admission into evidence after the  
25 deposition was over, but I can get that to you quickly.

1           THE COURT: All right. So I think what we  
2 should do is maybe stop this deposition and move on to  
3 something else because I don't think it's fair to plaintiffs  
4 that I don't get to see the exhibits as I'm listening to his  
5 deposition.

6           MR. ABHYANKAR: Understood.

7           THE COURT: So I guess, Sandoz, why don't you  
8 adjust and we'll come back to it. What's next?

9           MR. ABHYANKAR: Okay. Your Honor, the next  
10 deposition is Mr. Wirth, but I believe that we may have the  
11 same issue for Mr. Wirth. Not all of the exhibits are going  
12 to be in the binder that is with a sent to the Court this  
13 morning.

14           I believe after Mr. Wirth is Mr. Hostetler. Is  
15 that correct? Okay. And that is going to be played by  
16 Alvogen's counsel, so I don't know, Mr. Hanna, if you have  
17 you sent all of the exhibits for that witness?

18           MR. HANNA: Yes. I understand, Your Honor, you  
19 should have the exhibits for Mr., Dr. Hostetler.

20           THE COURT: And that would be for both sides  
21 since we're playing the joint transcript. Right?

22           MR. HANNA: Yes. That's my understanding.

23           THE COURT: All right. Just so you'll know,  
24 I've got a notebook that was Hostetler deposition, Hostetler  
25 clips. It has DTX-01 and DTX-1436. That's it. There are

1 just two exhibits discussed in Hostetler?

2 MR. HANNA: That's correct. I don't think there  
3 are any for plaintiffs for this one.

4 THE COURT: All right. Let's move on. We'll  
5 play Hostetler.

6 MR. HANNA: Thank you, Your Honor. And Dr.  
7 Hostetler, he is an attorney who prosecuted the compound  
8 patents, for example, the '309 patent and the '444 patent  
9 for context.

10 THE COURT: All right. Thank you, Mr. Hanna.

11 Ms. Bharkhda, did you have something? You were  
12 at the mike.

13 MS. BHARKHDA: No, Your Honor.

14 THE COURT: Maybe you can figure out how to get  
15 me these things. I don't know how many exhibits you're  
16 talking about. You can print them out maybe, but I don't  
17 think it's fair.

18 Going forward, if you're going to be the person  
19 presenting a joint deposition, you've got to present both  
20 sides in the notebook of all of the exhibits.

21 MS. BHARKHDA: Your Honor, may I ask, is Sandoz  
22 preparing the missing exhibits now?

23 THE COURT: I do think the burden is on  
24 Sandoz.

25 MR. HANNA: We are. Just so Your Honor

## Hostetler - deposition designations

1 knows, the next deposition after Dr. Hostetler, for  
2 Mr. Wirth, there's only one exhibit is our understanding,  
3 and Brianne, you can confirm. That one we can play and you  
4 will have that exhibit and we'll work on the Smyth missing  
5 exhibits.

6 THE COURT: Okay. And when it comes to Wirth,  
7 like I said, somebody can e-mail chambers. I don't know how  
8 long this exhibit is, but if it's not unduly lengthy, you  
9 can print it out. All right?

10 So let's do Hostetler. Thanks.

11 (The videotaped deposition of Dr. Michael Jon  
12 Hostetler was played as follows.)

13 "Question: Can you state your full name for the  
14 record, please?

15 "Answer: Michael Jon -- it's J-o-n --  
16 Hostetler. My primary office is in the South of Market, or  
17 SoMa office, in San Francisco. I am also listed as being in  
18 the San Diego office.

19 "MR. GUTMAN: Thank you. I'll ask the court  
20 reporter to mark as Hostetler Exhibit 6 -- I'm sorry.  
21 Exhibit 3. I apologize -- a document bearing Bates numbers  
22 IMBPCYC04444954 through -028 or -5028. Sorry. And it's a  
23 U.S. Patent No. 7,514,444.

24 "Question: Do you recognize Exhibit 3?

25 "Answer: I'm assuming this is a complete copy,

1 or should I look through it?

2 "Question: I believe it's a complete copy.

3 That's how it was produced to us.

4 "Answer: I see a document, U.S. Patent  
5 7,514,444. I could take the time to look through it to make  
6 sure that it's a complete copy; but other than that, I  
7 recognize it as U.S. Patent 7,514,444.

8 "Question: Did you -- were you involved in  
9 prosecuting and obtaining issuance of -- if we called this  
10 the '444 patent, will you understand what I mean?

11 "Answer: I will understand what you mean, Dr.  
12 Gutman.

13 "Question: Okay. Were you involved in  
14 obtaining the issuance of the '444 patent that is Exhibit 3?

15 "Answer: I was involved in the prosecution of  
16 the patent application and the issuance of the '444 patent.

17 "Question: Okay. And what do you mean by the  
18 'physical form of a structure'?

19 "Answer: The physical form of a structure is  
20 very broad. It's how it appears. And it could be  
21 everything from a gas, a liquid, a solid, an amorphous  
22 material, a crystalline material. It would refer to  
23 something that's in a bottle. It can refer to something as  
24 it's dissolved in a solution. It's whatever physical form  
25 that it takes.

1           "The word 'compound' is interchangeable with  
2 both chemical structure and the physical form of -- of -- of  
3 a material.

4           "Question: And so what did you intend to convey  
5 when you wrote, a compound of formula D having the structure  
6 depicted in claim 1?

7           "Answer: As I mentioned before, a compound  
8 refers to a chemical's structure as well as a physical form  
9 that that material is present. It's -- it's -- the term is  
10 -- refers to both the chemical, and the physical aspect of  
11 that chemical.

12           "Question: So is it your testimony that you  
13 intended claim 1 to cover all physical forms?

14           "Answer: All physical forms of compounds having  
15 the structure of formula D. Yeah. All physical forms.  
16 Correct.

17           "Question: So it's your testimony that the  
18 compound of claim 1, as you wrote it, as you understood what  
19 you were writing, covers amorphous forms of the compound  
20 having formula D. Correct?

21           "Answer: Covers -- claim 1 covers the amorphous  
22 forms of -- of compounds having the structure of formula D.  
23 Yes.

24           "Question: And I think you also mentioned that  
25 it's -- it was your intent as you wrote claim 1 that it

Hostetler - deposition designations

1 would cover crystalline forms also of the compound having  
2 formula D. Correct?

3 "Answer: It covers compound -- claim 1 covers  
4 crystalline forms of compounds having the structure of  
5 formula D.

6 MR. GUTMAN: I will ask the court reporter to  
7 mark as Exhibit 23 a document bearing Bates Numbers  
8 IMBPCYC00035120 through 145.

9 "Question: And can you identify Exhibit 23 for  
10 me, Dr. Hostetler?

11 "Answer: I recognize Exhibit 23 as a response  
12 to a non-final office action dated July -- on June 11th,  
13 2015 for the '949 patent application that I filed and signed  
14 electronically on August 24th, 2015.

15 "Question: And this is responding to the office  
16 action that is Exhibit 22. Correct?

17 "Answer: Yes, that is correct.

18 "Question: And starting on the page ending with  
19 Bates number 5129 and continuing through 5132, you address  
20 the -- you respond to the double patenting rejection based  
21 on the '444 patent that was provided in the office action  
22 that is Exhibit 22. Correct?

23 "Answer: I will review that and tell you.

24 Question.

25 So, Dr. Gutman, starting at the bottom of Bates



1 number 129 versus double patenting rejections, through what  
2 appears to be Bates number 132, bottom of the first full  
3 paragraph -- that's all based on the foregoing reasons, that  
4 appears to be where I address the double patenting rejection  
5 of the '444 patent.

6 "Question: That wasn't my question. My  
7 question was whether you believe, in view of the statement  
8 that you made here, that the '444 patent claims are enabled  
9 with respect to polymorphs of the disclosed compound.

10 "Answer: As a polymorph is a type of physical  
11 form of the -- the category of -- the category of physical  
12 forms is enabled in the '444 patent for compounds of  
13 formula D. And I believe it is my view that it is enabled.

14 This is a slightly different statement here. In  
15 fact, it's a substantially different statement here in  
16 regards to enablement of the '444 -- the '444 patent, in  
17 terms of polymorphs.

18 "Question: So it's your testimony that the '444  
19 patent claims are enabled with respect to polymorphs? Is  
20 that your testimony?

21 "Answer: It's enabled in terms of -- compounds  
22 of formula D, including structure -- I mean, physical forms  
23 of formula D; and that includes polymorphs.

24 "Question: Well, I'm not asking you to change  
25 your answer. I'm asking you to respond to my question,

Hostetler - deposition designations

1 which you haven't yet done. So let me try it again.

2 "I'm not asking you whether the '444 patent  
3 claims are enabled broadly, I'm asking you whether -- in  
4 view of the statement you made here, whether it's your  
5 understanding that the '444 -- '444 patent claims are  
6 enabled with respect to specifically polymorphs of the  
7 disclosed compound that's referenced here.

8 "Answer: One of skill in the art would not be  
9 able to predict what the polymorphs of that compound would  
10 look like. And that is different from whether or not it is  
11 enabled to make or use physical forms, including polymorphs  
12 of that compound."

13 (End of videotaped deposition.)

14 THE COURT: All right.

15 MR. ABHYANKAR: Your Honor. And we're working  
16 on the slides. I think the disconnect was that plaintiffs  
17 didn't identify what exhibits they had countered with, so  
18 we're pulling those and we'll send them over to the Court as  
19 soon as possible.

20 We'll move on to the deposition of Mr. David  
21 Wirth. He is a named inventor on both the '548 and the '231  
22 patents asserted against Alvogen.

23 He was deposed by defendants October 30th, 2019.  
24 You'll hear 34 minutes and four seconds of his deposition  
25 testimony. Seventeen minutes and 26 seconds will be charged

1 to defendant and 15 minutes and 38 seconds will be charged  
2 to plaintiff. And you should have one exhibit, JTX-8, Your  
3 Honor.

4 THE COURT: All right. Before you do that, why  
5 don't each side put a lawyer up and explain to me the  
6 significance of the deposition testimony I just heard.

7 MR. ABHYANKAR: I believe that was Alvogen's  
8 witness.

9 THE COURT: But I'm going to want somebody from  
10 plaintiffs to respond. All right. Briefly, Mr. Gutman.  
11 What was the significance of what I just heard?

12 MR. GUTMAN: I apologize, Your Honor. I was on  
13 mute.

14 THE COURT: That's okay.

15 MR. GUTMAN: I think it has broad significance.  
16 You may recall yesterday we were talking about whether  
17 Pollyea was enabled for polymorphs. The '444 patent is  
18 prior art that was available prior to the crystalline form  
19 patents. It's the compound patent.

20 You may recall from the opening statement that  
21 we provided that the compound patents were filed earlier and  
22 published before the filing date of the crystalline form  
23 patents, and so this is significant to whether crystalline  
24 forms and polymorphs were actually enabled prior to the  
25 filing date of the crystalline form patents.

1                   So that issue impacts a few issues in the case.  
2   One is --

3                   THE COURT:   So, wait.   So you are saying -- so  
4   what is the one-sentence summary here of the testimony is  
5   that the '444 patent claims enable what?

6                   MR. GUTMAN:   Polymorphs of ibrutinib which  
7   contributes to the obviousness of the crystalline form  
8   patents.

9                   THE COURT:   Okay.

10                  MR. GUTMAN:   Because -- and also helps establish  
11   that the prior art references that we're relying on as  
12   anticipatory under the theory of inherency were enabled as  
13   of the time, of the relevant time period.

14                  THE COURT:   And is it your position that the  
15   '444 patent enabled all polymorphs of ibrutinib?

16                  MR. GUTMAN:   I think that's what Dr. Hostetler  
17   testified to, Your Honor.

18                  THE COURT:   Okay.

19                  MR. GUTMAN:   So, yes.   Our position is that it  
20   enabled, and I think it's plaintiffs' position that it  
21   enabled all polymorphs, including form A.

22                  THE COURT:   Okay.   All right.   Thank you.

23                  Ms. Bharkhda?

24                  MS. BHARKHDA:   Your Honor, we don't actually  
25   think that his testimony has any relevance to any issue in

1 the case. The '444 patent is not asserted in the case.  
2 Alvogen is not relying on the '444 patent as an anticipatory  
3 reference. We don't think it's highly relevant. Also, I  
4 think it's an improper attempt to use prosecution counsel's  
5 opinion as an attempt to get in some kind of expert  
6 testimony that's improper expert testimony.

7 And --

8 THE COURT: Hold on. There's no objection to  
9 the term.

10 MS. BHARKHDA: We didn't because we don't think  
11 it's relevant.

12 THE COURT: Okay. But, you know, that objection  
13 was waived to the extent that its expert said it's  
14 inappropriate because it touches on anything. The only  
15 objection -- frankly, I don't think you -- I don't  
16 remember you voicing a relevance objection. I don't think  
17 there has been an objection to the admission of this  
18 testimony.

19 MS. BHARKHDA: We didn't. We didn't object to  
20 it. We just don't think it has any bearing on any issue.

21 THE COURT: Let me ask you this: Do you agree  
22 that the '444 patent enables all polymorphs of ibrutinib?

23 MS. BHARKHDA: I don't think that is a proper  
24 phrasing of the inquiry.

25 THE COURT: Okay.

1 MS. BHARKHDA: The question is whether the '444  
2 patent enabled the compound that it claims and we believe it  
3 enables the compounds in all physical forms.

4 THE COURT: All right.

5 MS. BHARKHDA: That does not mean it discloses  
6 any polymorph or enables particular polymorphs. It is not  
7 directed to crystalline forms or polymorphs of ibrutinib.  
8 It is directed to --

9 THE COURT: That's not my question. Just answer  
10 the question. Whether you think it's relevant or whether  
11 it's the right inquiry or not, does the '444 patent enable  
12 all forms, all polymorphs of ibrutinib?

13 MS. BHARKHDA: No, Your Honor.

14 THE COURT: Why not?

15 MS. BHARKHDA: Because it -- that's not the  
16 subject matter of the claim. It enables the compounds that  
17 are in the claims and it does not disclose all polymorphic  
18 forms or any for that matter polymorphic forms.

19 THE COURT: Okay. Thank you. All right.

20 Thank you, counsel. Anything else? We'll go  
21 with the next one.

22 MR. GUTMAN: Thank you, Your Honor.

23 MR. ABHYANKAR: So, Your Honor, we'll begin the  
24 deposition of Mr. Wirth now, which I said will last about  
25 34 minutes and four seconds.

Wirth - deposition designations

1 THE COURT: Okay. This one -- wait. Sorry.  
2 And I apologize. You probably said this, sir, before. I do  
3 have all the exhibits for this now?

4 MR. ABHYANKAR: You do. There's actually only  
5 one, JTX-8. It's the '753 patent.

6 THE COURT: Thank you very much. I apologize I  
7 had to ask that question again. Go ahead.

8 MR. ABHYANKAR: No problem.

9 (The videotaped deposition of David Dale Wirth  
10 was played as follows.)

11 "Question: Could you please state your full  
12 name for the record?

13 "Answer: David Dale Wirth.

14 "Question: What was your graduate degree in?

15 "Answer: Chemistry.

16 "Question: Okay. And did you have a particular  
17 specialty in chemistry?

18 "Answer: Organic chemistry.

19 "Question: Okay. Did you receive a Ph.D.?

20 "Answer: Yes.

21 "Question: In organic chemistry?

22 "Answer: Yes.

23 "Question: As part of your graduate work, did  
24 you have experience working with polymorphic forms of  
25 compounds?

Wirth - deposition designations

1 "Answer: No.

2 "Question: Any experience working with  
3 formulations, pharmaceutical formulations?

4 "Answer: In graduate school you mean?

5 "Question: Uh-hum.

6 "Answer: No.

7 "Question: Okay. Did you ever receive a  
8 medical degree?

9 "Answer: No.

10 "Question: Okay. After graduate school, what  
11 did you do?

12 "Answer: I did some post-doctoral research.

13 "Question: And where did you do that?

14 "Answer: Dartmouth College.

15 "Question: Okay.and at what -- when was that?  
16 When did you conduct this post-doctoral research?

17 "Answer: So began in the fall of 1980 through  
18 all or most of the following year, 1981.

19 "Question: What did you do after your  
20 post-doctoral research at Dartmouth?

21 "Answer: Then I accepted a position at Eli  
22 Lilly and Company.

23 "Question: At -- when was that, approximately?

24 "Answer: It began January 1982.

25 "Question: Okay. And where did you get -- get



1 your job in California?

2 "Answer: So I was employed by Seres  
3 Laboratories in Santa Rosa.

4 "Question: What is Seres Laboratories?

5 "Answer: Seres Laboratories was a small  
6 development and manufacturing company that worked with -- in  
7 the pharmaceutical area, basically.

8 "Question: And what was your role at Seres when  
9 you joined?

10 "Answer: I was I believe the title was  
11 director, director of chemistry or director of laboratory  
12 operations, one of those wordings.

13 "Question: And what were -- what were your  
14 responsibilities as director of chemistry at Seres?

15 "Answer. So the -- the working chemists that  
16 worked in the laboratory reported to me. So there was some  
17 management kind of responsibility for the other chemists.  
18 Then I was also responsible for doing chemistry. Actually  
19 did chemistry in the laboratory. And I was responsible for  
20 interactions with clients as well.

21 "Question: What types of projects did you do at  
22 Seres?

23 "Answer: The projects were of the development  
24 and the manufacturing, really, of intermediates and active  
25 drug substances.

Wirth - deposition designations

1           "Question: And what specifically did you do to  
2 assist with the development and manufacturing of  
3 intermediates and active drug substances at Seres?

4           "Answer: So all the things I just mentioned,  
5 such as working with the clients to discern what was  
6 needed, what the project goals were. And then working  
7 with the rest of the chemists and the staff to decide who  
8 was going to perform those activities and make some  
9 assignments with respect to responsibilities and activities  
10 that we were going to do. And I performed some laboratory  
11 work myself.

12           "Question: Or -- or, you know, that you used  
13 third parties to run specific tests for projects that you  
14 were asked to assist with from your clients?

15           "Answer: We did use some external analytical  
16 laboratories, yes.

17           "Question: Okay. Did Seres have the capability  
18 to run XRD analysis on a compound?

19           "Answer: No, we had no X-ray capabilities.

20           "Question: Were you ever involved in running an  
21 XRD test for a compound when you were at Seres?

22           "Answer: I -- I did not run the instruments  
23 myself.

24           "Question: Did you direct others to run XRD  
25 analyses for your clients while you were at Seres?

## Wirth - deposition designations

1           "Answer: So this was done by external  
2 laboratories. So there was, yes, direction sent to the  
3 external laboratory to run a sample.

4           "Question: Right.

5           But you didn't provide direction on how to run  
6 the sample, correct?

7           "Answer: No.

8           "Question: Okay. Have you ever run an XRD  
9 analysis, just generally?

10          "Answer: In terms of using the instrument  
11 myself?

12          "Question: Uh-hmm.

13          "Answer: No.

14          "Question: All right. So after Series -- or  
15 when did you leave series?

16          "Answer: It was early in the year 2010.

17          "Question: Are there -- are there known  
18 solvents that are traditionally used to discern whether you  
19 have a crystal or not?

20          "Answer: So I don't really know what people  
21 traditionally use. It was your word. What I use, I -- I  
22 have experience with a -- with designing the solvent system  
23 based upon the particular task, meaning that every molecule  
24 is different because it's different in structure.

25          And you often have different goals in mind. So

Wirth - deposition designations

1 there's -- there's no list that I would use over and over,  
2 typically, because of that.

3 "Question. Dr. Wirth, before the break we were  
4 talking about your time at Seres.

5 "Are you familiar with ibrutinib?

6 "Answer: Yes.

7 "Question: Okay. And how are you familiar with  
8 ibrutinib?

9 "Answer: It's -- it's a compound with the  
10 name -- that name was adopted after I worked on it, but I  
11 know it -- now that it does have that name. At the time  
12 when I was at Seres, we worked on that molecule, which we  
13 knew by the number, not -- not that name, right.

14 "Question: Right.

15 "Do you recall when you first became aware of  
16 that, the ibrutinib molecule?

17 "Answer: It was shortly after I joined Seres.  
18 So it was, I believe, in -- in -- some time during '06 or --  
19 or early '07, in that time frame.

20 "Question: How -- how did you become aware of  
21 the molecule?

22 "Answer: So we were approached -- the company,  
23 Seres, was approached by people from Pharmacyclics with a --  
24 a request. We typically call these requests for a proposal.  
25 Basically they asked us to evaluate the chemistry and decide

1 if we could provide a quote to -- you know, to provide  
2 services to them.

3 "So that's how we first heard of the molecule, I  
4 think.

5 "Question: And when you say they asked you to  
6 evaluate the chemistry, what specifically did they ask you  
7 to do?

8 "Answer: So they presented us with some of  
9 their -- their goals, meaning that they needed some material  
10 made, they needed some -- they needed process chemistry and  
11 process development. And ultimately they needed  
12 manufacturing, but probably in -- in phases, some initially  
13 and then some later, potentially.

14 "So in the -- in the initial discussion, I don't  
15 remember whether it -- we included all of those or whether  
16 we really just talked about the chemistry. They were  
17 primarily interested in process chemistry, making  
18 manufacturable processes.

19 "Question: What information did Pharmacyclics  
20 provide you at the outset?

21 "Answer: About this molecule?

22 "Question: Or about the molecule in asking you  
23 to help evaluate the chemistry.

24 "Answer: So they provided either initially or  
25 after the contract -- I'm not sure when this came -- but the

Wirth - deposition designations

1 data that they would -- they provided was really  
2 experimental procedures that had been used earlier in --  
3 within Pharmacyclics to prepare the molecule, basically.  
4 Experimental procedures was primarily where -- the  
5 information that we got.

6 "Question: Did Pharmacyclics ask -- ask you to  
7 evaluate their synthetic route and improve it?

8 "Answer: Yes.

9 "Question: Okay. Did they ask you to do  
10 anything else?

11 "Answer: Yes. But I don't -- again, it was in  
12 stages. So there were -- because they ultimately needed  
13 material delivered as well.

14 "Question: Who was your main point of contact  
15 at Pharmacyclics on the Ibrutinib project?

16 "Answer: Mark Smyth.

17 "Question: What was Mark Smyth's role in the  
18 ibrutinib project?

19 "Answer: My understanding was that Mark was the  
20 -- in charge of the process chemistry.

21 "Question: How was he in charge of the process  
22 chemistry?

23 "Answer: By -- as -- as we just said, his --  
24 his interaction then with us was to manage -- manage the  
25 process chemistry, and he was the key person that interacted

Wirth - deposition designations

1 with -- with me at Seres. So from the standpoint that we  
2 were doing process research and process chemistry, that  
3 seemed to be his function, as I understand it, at  
4 Pharmacyclics.

5 "Question: Are you familiar with a lab called  
6 SSCI?

7 "Answer: I am.

8 "Question: Okay. Who is SSCI?

9 "Answer: They're a solid state chemistry firm  
10 located in West Lafayette, Indiana.

11 "Question: Did you ever use them as part of  
12 your work at Seres?

13 "Answer: So I -- I do not specifically recall  
14 which laboratory we used. I -- my recollection was that we  
15 did send samples to a solid state chemistry laboratory. But  
16 I -- I cannot remember which laboratory we used.

17 "Question: Okay. All right. Well, do you  
18 remember why you sent samples to a solid state chemistry  
19 laboratory?

20 "Answer: Yes. We -- we were asking -- we were  
21 having analysis done to determine the -- really the crystal  
22 form of the materials that we had.

23 "Question: With respect to the ibrutinib  
24 project?

25 "Answer: Yes.

Wirth - deposition designations

1 "Question: Okay. And why were you doing that?

2 "Answer: As part of the development of a drug  
3 substance, it's important to understand what solid state  
4 form you have to characterize the -- the drug substance that  
5 you have as fully as you can. And that's one of the things  
6 that is wise to do, in my opinion, to discern whether the  
7 material you have is crystalline or not crystalline. And  
8 then if it is crystalline, to record, you know, the  
9 characteristics of it, such as its XRPD pattern and just to  
10 fully characterize the material that you have.

11 "As part of the ibrutinib project, you,  
12 yourself, did not characterize the crystalline form of the  
13 ibrutinib molecule that you received from Pharmacyclics?

14 "Answer: The compound that we received from  
15 Pharmacyclics is what you're asking?

16 "Question: Uh-hmm.

17 "Answer: I did not characterize that.

18 "Question: Okay. You sent -- you sent some  
19 samples to the third-party lab, right?

20 "Answer: We did.

21 "Question: Okay. Which samples were those?

22 "Answer: Those were samples that I had produced  
23 in the laboratory.

24 "Question: Were they labeled with a -- with a  
25 number or some sort of designation?



Wirth - deposition designations

1                   "Answer: I certainly don't recall specifically  
2 what any one was, but the practice was to label them with  
3 the notebook number from -- that describes their  
4 preparation. So any sample that went out would have had  
5 a -- a notebook number assigned to it and affixed to the  
6 label.

7                   "Question: All right. Do you recall what types  
8 of analytical tests were run by the third-party lab in  
9 determining the crystalline form of the samples that you  
10 prepared?

11                   "Answer: I -- I recall that XRPD was our -- was  
12 of our primary interest, and so we certainly had that test  
13 run.

14                   "Question: Just to confirm, you had nothing to  
15 do with the formulation or the -- the -- the design of the  
16 making of a formulation of the capsule itself, correct?

17                   "Answer: No. My only involvement was producing  
18 the drug substance that was used.

19                   "Question: Dr. Wirth, I've handed you what's --  
20 of you've been handed what's been marked as Defendants'  
21 Exhibit 5. If you could take a look at it. This is a copy  
22 of U.S. Patent 9,296,753.

23                   "Answer: Okay.

24                   "Question: All right. Have you seen this  
25 patent before?

Wirth - deposition designations

1 "Answer: Yes.

2 "Question: If you turn to the second page, you  
3 see under inventors it lists Mark Smyth, Erik Goldman,  
4 yourself and Norbert Purro.

5 "Do you see that?

6 "Answer: Yes.

7 "Question: So you were listed as a named  
8 inventor of this patent?

9 "Answer: Yes.

10 "Question: All right. Are you, in fact, an  
11 inventor on this patent?

12 "Answer: Yes.

13 "Question: Okay. And what -- what is -- what  
14 were your contributions to this patent as far as the  
15 invention is concerned?

16 "Answer: So my contribution was in the -- in  
17 the initial discovery and isolation of some polymorphic  
18 forms of this compound.

19 "Question: What did you do to discover or  
20 isolate polymorphic forms of the compound that is claimed in  
21 the patent?

22 "Answer: So I designed some laboratory  
23 experiments and executed some laboratory experiments to --  
24 to try to crystallize the compound and was successful in  
25 crystallizing the compound. And then those were -- were

1 analyzed externally. And it was, in fact, found that they  
2 were crystalline.

3 "Question: Right.

4 "You said that your contribution was the  
5 discovery and isolation of polymorphic forms of the  
6 compound. Any specific polymorphic forms?

7 "Answer: So I'm not -- I'm not clear on how  
8 many of the polymorphic forms I actually discovered. I -- I  
9 do believe that at least one of them -- well, at a minimum,  
10 one, but there -- there seemed to be several here that --  
11 that are in the examples. And there were several that I  
12 found.

13 "Question: So you're not clear on how -- on  
14 the -- how many of the polymorphic forms you discovered,  
15 but there were several that you found; is that your  
16 testimony?

17 "Answer: So the -- I think several is probably  
18 an incorrect word since what -- what you have refreshed  
19 my memory from looking at the prior reports was that we had  
20 two forms in particular, which is what I do recall, that  
21 there were two forms that had been found and that we had --  
22 we were dealing with those particular batches that we  
23 reviewed. So my memory is that I was working primarily with  
24 two forms.

25 "Question: What forms were those?

## Wirth - deposition designations

1           "Answer: So those were the forms that -- one  
2           was the high melting form, 155, roughly, melting form that  
3           was in this document is -- appears to be called form A and  
4           in this report was called form A.

5           "Question: And what was the other form?

6           "Answer: It was referred to as B, I think,  
7           lower melting form B.

8           "Question: You didn't perform any experiments  
9           regarding XRPD (sic) at Seres to identify a particular  
10          crystalline form of ibrutinib, correct?

11          "Answer: So we -- we did not have the  
12          capability of performing XRPD at Seres because we lacked the  
13          instrument.

14          "Question: Uh-hum.

15          "Answer: So I didn't run XRPD myself.

16          "Question: And you did not direct the XRPD  
17          testing that the third-party lab ran on the ibrutinib  
18          compound?

19          "Answer: I directed it because I sent samples  
20          to them and told them to run XRPD.

21          "Question: And did you direct them as to how  
22          to run the XRPD analysis that were run by the third-party  
23          lab?

24          "Answer: No.

25          "Question: If you could turn to column 63 of

1 the patent. If you see there in example 1, under example 1,  
2 it says preparation of crystalline forms and it has a  
3 compound.

4 "Do you see that?

5 "Answer: Yes.

6 "Question: And it's compound 1. That is -- is  
7 that ibrutinib?

8 "Answer: I believe it is, yes.

9 "Question: Okay. And under that there are  
10 listed three routes for Form A: Form A route 1, form A  
11 route 2, and Form A route 3.

12 "Do you see that?

13 "Answer: Yes.

14 "Question: You did not identify any forms other  
15 than form A or form B, according to your earlier testimony,  
16 during your work on the ibrutinib project, correct?

17 "Answer: So what I'm -- what I recall doing was  
18 focus -- the focus was on those two forms. I only really  
19 dealt from a manufacturing perspective with form A and form  
20 B. Those were the forms that were the most relevant to the  
21 manufacturing.

22 "So that's why they're in my memory as to the  
23 forms that we used at the time, that we had both of those  
24 relevant forms because we actually had made them.

25 "Question: And you don't remember identifying

1 or finding form C through F, correct?

2 "Answer: I do not.

3 "Question: What is the invention of the '753  
4 patent?

5 "You're an inventor on the patent. I'm asking  
6 for what you believe the invention to be.

7 "Answer: The -- the invention is related to  
8 crystalline form.

9 "Question: What specifically about crystalline  
10 forms is the invention related to?

11 "Answer: So the patent identifies crystalline  
12 forms of ibrutinib.

13 "Question: I -- I'm just asking what you  
14 believe your invention to be.

15 "Answer: Crystalline forms of ibrutinib.

16 "Question: Okay. Anything else?

17 "Answer: As -- as directed in this patent? No.  
18 It's -- it's around the crystalline forms.

19 "Question: Fair to say that you did not  
20 contribute to the pharmaceutical formulation of ibrutinib?

21 "Answer: So my contribution was really to  
22 discover and produce ultimately when we manufactured  
23 crystalline forms of ibrutinib that are available to use in  
24 the pharmaceutical formulation. So from that aspect, yes, I  
25 contributed to the formulation.

Wirth - deposition designations

1 "Question: Did you contribute to what was in  
2 the formulation?

3 "Answer: Only the active drug substance  
4 portion.

5 "Question: You have no experience in  
6 formulation generally, correct?

7 "Answer: I'm not trained in pharmaceutical  
8 formulations.

9 "Question: For example, you were not involved  
10 in the selection of what excipients to use in the ibrutinib  
11 capsule formulation, form; right?

12 "Answer: That's correct.

13 "Question: All right. When did you come up  
14 with the invention that is disclosed in the '753 patent?

15 "Answer: So the -- the research we did at Seres  
16 was mostly in 2007.

17 "Question: Is that it, just in 2007?

18 "Answer: Oh, no, it continued. I mean, we did  
19 certainly laboratory work in 2008, and then -- and we did  
20 manufacturing work again in 2009. So we -- we were doing  
21 work on that process throughout that.

22 "In -- in terms of specific experiments or when  
23 we did specific things, I would have to look at the  
24 laboratory notebooks to -- to try to identify, you know, a  
25 more specific date for a particular event.

## Wirth - deposition designations

1           "Question: What was Mark Smyth's contribution  
2 to the invention?

3           "Answer: So Mark -- Mark Smyth was the person  
4 at Pharmacyclics that I interacted with on a routine basis.  
5 And he and I discussed all aspects of the projects,  
6 including the solid state forms when we got to that point.  
7 So he was involved in the discussions.

8           "Question: He was involved in the discussions  
9 regarding what?

10          "Answer: All aspects of the project. So that  
11 would include the -- the crystalline forms that -- that we  
12 were working with and found, yes.

13          "Question: Okay. So what was his contribution  
14 to the invention?

15          "Answer: That I don't know.

16          "Question: Because it was that you discovered  
17 the crystalline form, correct?

18          "Answer: I believe I was the first person to  
19 run the experiments that I identified that -- that formed  
20 the crystalline forms. So I -- I first ran those  
21 experiments.

22          "Question: Okay. When was Erick Goldman's  
23 contribution to the invention of the '753 patent?

24          "Answer: I don't know that.

25          "Question: Okay. Norbert Purro, who is that?



Wirth - deposition designations

1 "Answer: I do not know him.

2 "Question: And I -- I then assume you do not  
3 know what his contribution to this -- the invention of the  
4 '753 patent is?

5 "Answer: That's correct.

6 "Question: If you could pull out Exhibit -- I  
7 think it's Exhibit 5 now or -- 5 or 6 of the patent, '753  
8 patent. Thank you.

9 "And if you look at column 66, line 20, there is  
10 a reference to the X-ray powdered diffraction for Form A,  
11 which is displayed in Figure 1.

12 "Do you see that?

13 "Answer: Yes.

14 "Question: And it mentions characteristic  
15 peaks, which include -- and then they refer to a number of  
16 peaks.

17 "Do you see that?

18 "Answer: Yes.

19 "Question: You were not involved in identifying  
20 those peaks as characteristic of form A with respect to your  
21 work on the ibrutinib project, correct?

22 "Answer: That's correct.

23 "Question: All right. And you did not actually  
24 identify these peaks as characteristic of form A as part of  
25 your responsibility or roles in the ibrutinib project,

1 correct?

2 "Answer: Correct.

3 "Question: Did you speak with Dr. Smyth after  
4 that e-mail exchange?

5 "Answer: About that subject?

6 "Question: Or just generally.

7 "Answer: I spoke to him, yes. I have spoken to  
8 him since, yes.

9 "Question: About what?

10 "Answer: About the Heroes of Chemistry Award.

11 "Question: And what is the Heroes of Chemistry  
12 Award?

13 "Answer: It's a national award given by the  
14 American Chemical Society for -- it's given to industrial  
15 chemists as -- as opposed to academic chemists for a  
16 particular project that was, I guess, deemed worthy of  
17 recognition.

18 "Question: And why were you talking to Dr.  
19 Smyth about the Heroes of Chemistry Award?

20 "Answer: So he contacted me to tell me that  
21 Pharmacyclics was planning to apply for it, and -- and  
22 that was some time before this. But this year it actually  
23 occurred. So the actual awards ceremony was in late August  
24 this past summer, and I attended in person. And Dr.  
25 Smyth was there. So I spoke with him at the -- at the

1 ceremony.

2 "Question: Okay. What were -- what were the  
3 award -- strike that.

4 "Were you nominated for an award?

5 "Answer: So the -- the -- the award goes to  
6 individual chemists, I think, so the chemists were listed by  
7 name and then it was related to a particular project.

8 "So, yes, I -- I was part of the team -- there  
9 were several -- that were associated with this project at  
10 Pharmacyclics, several chemists that were at the -- you  
11 know, simultaneously received this award.

12 "Question: Okay. And this was for the  
13 ibrutinib project that we're talking about?

14 "Answer: It was, yes.

15 "Question: Okay. Did you win the award?

16 "Answer: We did win, yes.

17 "Question: Would you -- and has it been routine  
18 in your practice that for any drugs that you're working with  
19 that exist in crystalline form, that you or someone else  
20 involved with the development of that drug would perform a  
21 polymorphic screen in order to control for that issue?

22 "Answer: In -- in the very early days of my  
23 career, no. But within the past 15 to 20 years, yes, it --  
24 it has become common -- more commonly understood and brought  
25 to my attention having, again, worked on a couple at Lilly

1 many years ago. So I would now consider it part of the  
2 normal work that one would do to develop a pharmaceutical  
3 product.

4 "Question: And that's been the case throughout  
5 the last 15 to 20 years?

6 "Answer: Yes.

7 "Question: When you began working with  
8 ibrutinib, was there anything known about the crystallinity  
9 of batches of ibrutinib that had been prepared to that  
10 point?

11 "Answer: So my recollection is the first time  
12 that we discussed this with Mark Smyth, he indicated that  
13 they felt the material they had was amorphous.

14 "Question: When you first synthesized  
15 ibrutinib, was it using a process that was provided to you  
16 by PCYC?

17 "Answer: You're -- are you speaking about the  
18 entire synthetic sequence or -- or individual steps or --

19 "Question: To start with, I'm referring to the  
20 entire synthetic sequence.

21 "Answer: So the -- the sequence that they  
22 provided and the experimentals that they provided were the  
23 basis for the beginning of my research. So I don't  
24 remember, again, detailed experiments from that long ago  
25 without contacting the notebook pages. But I -- I would

1 have started with running experiments either the way that  
2 they ran them or in a very similar manner.

3 "Question: And what was the -- the purpose of  
4 your -- your work on ibrutinib in that time frame?

5 "Answer: So the -- in the initial beginning of  
6 the project, the -- the first challenge was around the  
7 process selection for the entire sequence.

8 "So began, of course, at the beginning where we  
9 had purchased starting materials and then began to work  
10 through sort of step at a time to see if this -- the first  
11 reaction would work and could it be performed well as was  
12 written, did it need modification and sort of would make an  
13 evaluation as you go along.

14 "So the -- the first step, and decide whether it  
15 needed improvements and what and how much and what the goals  
16 would be, and then moved on to the next step with a similar  
17 kind of evaluation and worked down the synthetic chain,  
18 really.

19 "Question: So effectively, you were tasked with  
20 refining the synthetic process for preparing ibrutinib?

21 "Answer: Yes.

22 "Question: During your efforts to refine the  
23 process, what is the first instance you recall with respect  
24 to the crystallinity of the finished ibrutinib product?

25 "When -- what was the first issue that came

1 about with respect to the crystallinity of that product?

2 "Answer: I don't recall there was an issue  
3 other than the fact that having known from Mark that they  
4 didn't have a crystalline form. I knew that when we got to  
5 that point, we didn't have a preset form to make.

6 "So we were -- I would have needed them to  
7 evaluate forms, look for forms or try to make forms,  
8 basically, because there was no -- there was no prior  
9 history of crystalline forms. So that was just the -- the  
10 work waiting to be done. And as I say, until we had some  
11 significant quantities.

12 "Question: Was it -- did you consider it  
13 preferable to have a crystalline form as opposed to an  
14 amorphous form of ibrutinib for the drug product?

15 "Answer: Yes.

16 "Question: Why is that?

17 "Answer: The -- in -- the advantage to the --  
18 to a crystalline form in and in general in -- in a -- as a  
19 pharmaceutical product, not necessarily anything specific  
20 about ibrutinib, but the general reasons one would use a  
21 crystalline form would be to enhance stability. And that's  
22 both physical and chemical.

23 "So physical stability would relate to things  
24 like hygroscopicity. Typically amorphous materials are  
25 often more hygroscopic, and their water content varies as a

1 function of the relative humidity of their environment.

2 "And so that means that -- especially in some  
3 countries in the world where it's quite humid or some places  
4 where it's quite humid could be difficult to maintain a  
5 consistent form or potency of the material just because of  
6 the level of hydration going up and down.

7 "So physical stability would be one. Chemical  
8 stability is -- is another primary reason that traditionally  
9 in a lot of instances crystalline materials are just more  
10 stable chemically. Their rates of oxidation would be lower,  
11 for instance, reaction with -- with oxygen or with just  
12 thermal degradation. They tend to be faster in an  
13 amorphous or a glassy material than they do in a crystalline  
14 material.

15 "Question: Would you consider a polymorph of an  
16 API to be pure with respect to the API?

17 "Answer: In -- in my knowledge, purity has  
18 nothing to do with the form, per se.

19 "Question: But if I give you a polymorph of an  
20 API, would you -- strike that.

21 "If I give you a polymorph of an API, would you  
22 expect there to be any other chemical entity in the  
23 polymorph other than the API?

24 "Answer: So there's -- there's no such thing as  
25 a completely hundred percent pure compound anywhere in the

1 universe, to my knowledge.

2 "Question: Right.

3 "But I asked you about a polymorph, not a  
4 compound.

5 "Answer: So there is no substance that is a  
6 hundred percent pure polymorph or any other substance that  
7 is a hundred percent pure, just as a matter of scientific  
8 principle.

9 "Question: But you use recrystallization to  
10 remove impurities from your -- from your API, right?

11 "Answer: I have used recrystallization to  
12 improve the purity of a compound.

13 "Question: But in your experience, you're not  
14 able to completely remove impurities, right?

15 "Answer: Again, I would say when you say  
16 complete, that implies to me a hundred percent purity,  
17 meaning nothing else is possibly present. And that never is  
18 possible."

19 (End of videotaped deposition.)

20 MR. ABHYANKAR: Your Honor, a quick update. I  
21 understand that the missing exhibits have been sent to the  
22 Court and they are being printed.

23 THE COURT: I got them.

24 MR. ABHYANKAR: Sure.

25 THE COURT: All right. Ms. Bharkhda, anything?



## Smyth - deposition designations

1 You're on mute.

2 MS. BHARKHDA: I'm sorry. Who are we proceeding  
3 with next? I'm not sure I am clear on that.

4 MR. ABHYANKAR: If the Court has the printed out  
5 exhibits, then we can start. We might back up again unless  
6 the Court would like to start from the beginning.

7 THE COURT: No. Go ahead.

8 MS. BHARKHDA: I was going to say, as long as  
9 the Court has the exhibits that it needs, we've been rolling  
10 that out behind the scenes, that would be fine with us.

11 THE COURT: You might have to back up like three  
12 or four lines where we were.

13 MR. ABHYANKAR" okay.

14 THE COURT: With the introduction of Smyth 3.

15 MR. ABHYANKAR: Have you got it?

16 THE COURT: Hold on one second. All right.

17 MR. ABHYANKAR: Thank you, Your Honor.

18 (The videotaped deposition of Dr. Mark Smyth was  
19 played as follows.)

20 "Question: When you say the third-party  
21 manufacturer, you are referring to he was examining a  
22 recrystallization process, who specifically are you  
23 referring to?

24 "Answer: Dr. David Wirth.

25 "Question: Dr. David Wirth was from Seres?

Smyth - deposition designations

1 "Answer: He worked at Seres, yes.

2 "Question: Was Dr. David Wirth your primary  
3 contact at Seres?

4 "Answer: Yes.

5 "Question: Who directed Dr. David Wirth to  
6 examine the recrystallization process at Seres?

7 "Answer: Me.

8 "Question: I am going to hand you what has been  
9 marked as Smyth Exhibit 3, a document bearing production  
10 numbers, and, Dr. Smyth, by production numbers, I am  
11 referring to these numbers that have been stamped at the  
12 bottom of each page on the right-hand side, which we call  
13 Bates numbers.

14 The production number IMBPCYC05002448 to  
15 IMBPCYC05002482.

16 "Dr. Smyth, do you recognize Exhibit 3?

17 "Answer: Yes.

18 "Question: If you turn over from the -- on the  
19 first page, it says No. 678; correct?

20 "On the first page it says No. 678; correct?

21 "Answer: It says that, yes.

22 "Question: If you turn it over, on the second  
23 page it says assigned to, and that is a handwritten name:  
24 Mark S. Smyth; is that right?

25 "Answer: Correct.

Smyth - deposition designations

1 "Question: That's you; correct?

2 "Answer: Yes.

3 "Question: Does this lab notebook between the  
4 dates that we just went through -- 26 November of 2017 to  
5 April 27, 2010, -- does this time period reflected in the  
6 lab notebook accurately reflect the work that you personally  
7 performed in the lab BTK project?

8 "Answer: Yes. It reflects the time period.

9 "Question: I am just going to mark the patents  
10 all together.

11 "I'm handing you, Dr. Smyth, a document bearing  
12 production numbers IMBPCY04446283 to 352, which is U.S.  
13 patent No. 9,725,455.

14 "I am handing you a document which has been  
15 premarked as Smyth Exhibit 6, bearing production numbers  
16 IMBPCYC04446822 to 6892, which is U.S. Patent No.  
17 10,106,548.

18 "I am marking as -- I am handing you, Dr. Smyth,  
19 what has been premarked as Smyth Exhibit 7, a document  
20 bearing production numbers IMBPCY04446893 to 6961, which is  
21 Patent No. 10,125,140.

22 "Dr. Smyth, looking at -- we can start with  
23 Exhibit 4, which is U.S. Patent No. 9,296,753 patent;  
24 correct?

25 "Answer: Yes.

## Smyth - deposition designations

1                   "Question: For the purposes of this deposition,  
2 if I refer to this as '753 patent, you'll understand what I  
3 mean; correct?

4                   "Answer: Yes.

5                   "Question: Do you recognize this patent -- '753  
6 patent?

7                   "Answer: I don't recognize it by number.

8                   "Question: Okay. If you turn over to the  
9 second page of the patent which has a production number, the  
10 last three digits end at 078.

11                   "Do you see on the top upper right hand there is  
12 a line within parentheses that says 72, and it says  
13 inventors?

14                   "Do you see that?

15                   "Answer: Yes.

16                   "Question: Your name is listed on the top, Mark  
17 Smyth; is that correct?

18                   "Answer: Correct.

19                   "Question: You are listed as an inventor on  
20 this '753 patent; correct?

21                   "Answer: Correct.

22                   "Question: How are you involved with this  
23 patent concerning -- that is titled crystalline forms of  
24 ibrutinib?

25                   "Answer: I was responsible for leading all the

1 technical work on the project from both in-house efforts, as  
2 well as the third parties.

3 "Question: Okay. Your description of the  
4 contribution that you made to this patent, '753 -- your  
5 contribution was to lead the technical work on the project  
6 from in-house efforts, as well as third parties; is that  
7 correct?

8 "Answer: That was a significant part of it.

9 "The other part was to help make decisions on  
10 what to do next in the work.

11 "Question: I am just asking if you contributed  
12 to what has been described on this page on column 63 under  
13 form A, route 1.

14 "Answer: I can't recall specific contributions  
15 to what I would have done for this part or what I would have  
16 contributed for this particular excerpt.

17 "We did have discussions around which solvents  
18 to use in this aspect of the work; so I was involved in  
19 those discussions.

20 "Question: Do you recall where these solvents  
21 that are listed on route 1 from what we are looking at,  
22 column 63 under form A, route 1 -- where this list of  
23 solvents came from?

24 "Answer: They would have resulted from the  
25 discussions we had with everyone working on the project

1     about what to use to try and accomplish crystallizations  
2     based on the work that we had already performed with David  
3     Wirth or in-house efforts.

4             "Question: There was work performed on in-house  
5     efforts outside of David Wirth who was at Seres; correct?

6             "Answer: Correct.

7             "Question: Who performed those in-house  
8     efforts?

9             "Answer: Erick Goldman.

10            "Question: Okay. This is Dr. Erick Goldman,  
11     who is also listed as an inventor on the patent, '753;  
12     correct?

13            "Answer: Erick Goldman is listed as an  
14     inventor, yes.

15            "Question: Who is Erick Goldman?

16            "Answer: Erick Goldman is a scientist that I  
17     hired at Pharmacyclics to do process chemistry.

18            "Question: If you go back to your lab notebook,  
19     Exhibit 3.

20            "If you go to page 3 of your lab notebook, which  
21     has a production number ending in '458.

22            On the top of that page -- that page, on the  
23     left top is dated March 20, 2008; correct?

24            "Answer: Correct.

25            "Question: On the top of that page, the title

1 of this page that we are looking at -- that says generate  
2 acetone solvate of PCI-32765?

3  
4 "Answer: I see that.

5 "Question: Do you recognize that as the  
6 registration code for ibrutinib that was used at  
7 Pharmacyclics?

8 "Answer: That is the internal code we used for  
9 the ibrutinib molecule. Yes.

10 "Question: By the efforts that you just  
11 mentioned, the in-house efforts that you mentioned, that you  
12 ran yourself, would that include what is reflected -- the  
13 in-house crystallization efforts that you ran yourself --  
14 does this page reflect some of those efforts?

15 "Answer: Yes.

16 "Question: If you turn to page -- of your lab  
17 notebook page 10, which is -- the production number ends in  
18 465.

19 "That page on the top left corner -- the date is  
20 October 17th, 2008; correct?

21 "Answer: Correct.

22 "Question: On the top of that page, the title  
23 is growth of X-ray quality crystals of PCI-32765, and within  
24 parentheses, it says lot 082032, and it says DMC/HEX.

25 "Do you see that?

Smyth - deposition designations

1 "Answer: I see that.

2 "Question: Hex -- that would be hexane?

3 "Answer: Yes.

4 "Question: Does this page reflect some of the  
5 in-house crystallization efforts that you personally  
6 performed as part of the ibrutinib project that you just  
7 mentioned?

8 "Answer: This is a part of it. Yes.

9 "Question: Similarly, if you turn the page  
10 over to page 11, that is dated also October 17th, '08;  
11 correct?

12 "Answer: Yes.

13 "Question: That says on the top title X-ray  
14 crystals of 32765, EtOAc/Hex.

15 "Do you see that?

16 "Answer: I see that.

17 "Question: This would also reflect the part of  
18 the work that you did in-house on crystallization efforts of  
19 ibrutinib?

20 "Answer: Yes.

21 "Question: Similarly, the next page over, page  
22 12, that's ending in production number 467.

23 "The start date is October 17th, 2008 on the  
24 top; correct?

25 "Answer: October 17th, yes.



Smyth - deposition designations

1 "Question: That says X-ray crystals of 32765.  
2 Acetone/hex.

3 "Do you see that?

4 "Answer: I see that.

5 "Question: This page would reflect some of the  
6 in-house crystallization efforts that you performed on  
7 ibrutinib; correct?

8 "Answer: Correct.

9 "Question: Do you recall what SSCI is?

10 "Answer: That's the third-party lab that we had  
11 contracted through the work with Seres, as well as  
12 separately, to do some analysis of the solid state  
13 properties.

14 "Question: Were you involved in engaging SSCI  
15 for the work on ibrutinib?

16 "Answer: Yes.

17 "Question: When you say that SSCI, the  
18 third-party lab that was contracted the work at Seres, what  
19 do you mean by that?

20 "Answer: Initially, SSCI was used as an  
21 analysis lab, analytical lab by Seres. David Wirth had  
22 experience working with them before on other programs, and  
23 he recommended that we have samples sent through there with  
24 no other identifier other than a lab notebook number from  
25 him to get some data.

Smyth - deposition designations

1           At a later date, we contracted SSCI separately.

2           Question. I see. Thank you for that clarification.

3           At the time, initially, did Seres send any  
4           samples to SSCI by themselves for analysis?

5           "Answer: Not by themselves. It was always  
6           under my agreement or direction.

7           "Question: Other than those crystallization  
8           efforts that were intended for single crystal analysis, do  
9           you know if anyone at Pharmacyclics performed any  
10          crystallization efforts for powder diffraction analysis?

11          "Answer: During what period?

12          "Question: Before Dr. Goldman's work in 2010.

13          "Answer: Not that I can recall, no.

14          "Question: Do you know what Dr. Goldman's  
15          contribution was to this patent?

16          "Answer: As part of the project team, Erick had  
17          responsibilities for coordinating activities around solid  
18          state analysis once he joined the company. That was a part  
19          of his responsibilities.

20          "Question: You mentioned some in-house  
21          crystallization efforts that were conducted by Dr. Goldman;  
22          correct?

23          "Answer: He did a few experiments. Yes.

24          "Question: Okay. If you look at the -- again,  
25          the second page of your patent '753 and list of inventors,

1     also listed is Dr. David Wirth.

2             "Do you see that?"

3             "Answer: Yes.

4             "Question: That's the same Dr. David Wirth that  
5     we were just talking about from Seres labs; is that right?

6             "Answer: Correct.

7             "Question: Do you know what Dr. Wirth's  
8     contribution was on the '753 patent?

9             "Answer: I can only comment on what his role in  
10    the project team was.

11            "Question: What was that?

12            "Answer: He was responsible for the experiments  
13    related to the process development activities and that led  
14    to the crystallization/recrystallization studies that led to  
15    the discovery of the polymorphs of ibrutinib.

16            "Question: Then other -- the fourth inventor  
17    listed on the '753 patent is Norbert Purro?

18            "Do you see that?"

19            "Answer: I see that.

20            "Question: Do you know who Norbert Purro  
21    is?

22            "Answer: I know Norbert.

23            "Question: Who is Dr. Purro?

24            "Answer: Mr.

25            "Question: Mr. Purro?

1                   "Answer: He is a scientist that worked on the  
2 pharmaceutical sciences portion of the project.

3                   "Question: Do you know what Mr. Purro's  
4 contribution was to the '753 patent?

5                   "Answer: I can only comment on what Norbert's  
6 role was in the project as a whole.

7                   "Question: What was that?

8                   "Answer: His role was to develop the  
9 formulation of the ibrutinib for clinical studies.

10                  "Question: In terms of your role, your  
11 contribution with respect to the '753 patent, you were not  
12 involved in the formulation aspect; correct?

13                  "Answer: No. As I already stated, I had  
14 nothing to do with the actual formulation work other than  
15 supplying API.

16                  "Question: Okay. Going back to our discussion  
17 about your involvement on the polymorph analysis of  
18 ibrutinib at Pharmacyclics, when you mentioned that you were  
19 working through Dr. Wirth, you were working with SSCI at  
20 that time early after you had joined on the polymorph  
21 analysis of ibrutinib; correct?

22                  "Answer: That's not entirely accurate. No.

23                  "Question: Can you let me know what was  
24 inaccurate?

25                  "Answer: David had, with our agreement and

1 direction, sent samples to SSCI when he first started doing  
2 the recrystallization work in early 2008 and encountered  
3 materials that looked and based differently than what we had  
4 seen before.

5 "He proposed it. We talked about it, and I  
6 agreed to have him send samples without any identifier other  
7 than a lab notebook number to SSCI.

8 "Later, in 2008, Pharmacyclics engaged SSCI  
9 directly to perform a solid state analysis.

10 "Question: Okay. Do you recall, other than  
11 SSCI, if any other third party performed polymorph analysis  
12 before SSCI did in early 2008 after you joined  
13 Pharmacyclics?

14 "Do you have that recollection?

15 "Answer: I don't recall anyone else doing any  
16 analysis of polymorphs prior to 2008.

17 "Question: Were you aware -- do you recall if  
18 anyone at Pharmacyclics had performed polymorph analysis on  
19 ibrutinib before you joined Pharmacyclics in November of  
20 2007?

21 "Answer: I was not aware of anything that had  
22 been done.

23 "Question: Okay. Do you remember if anyone at  
24 Pharmacyclics had engaged a third party analysis lab to  
25 perform any polymorph analysis of ibrutinib prior to

Smyth - deposition designations

1 joining -- you joining in November of 2007?

2 "Answer: I don't recall any activities in that  
3 area prior to my joining. No.

4 "Question: Okay. I am going to hand you, Dr.  
5 Smyth, what has been marked as Smyth Exhibit 10, which is an  
6 e-mail that has production number IMBPCY05289693, and then  
7 this e-mail has an attachment, which has been marked as  
8 Smyth Exhibit 11, and that has production numbers  
9 IMBPCYC05289694 to IMBPCYC05289712.

10 And what is the GMP lot?

11 "Answer: A good manufacturing practice. That  
12 is a designation associated with material prepared for  
13 dosing humans in clinical trials.

14 "Question: Would the GMP lot be associated with  
15 certain specifications?

16 "Answer: GMP lots are released according to  
17 accepted specifications.

18 "Question: How are those specifications set?

19 "Answer: In my personal experience, it is based  
20 or previous experience making that material and working in  
21 collaboration with the quality assurance, quality control,  
22 analytical chemistry, and the toxicology teams to define  
23 acceptable limits.

24 "Question: The GMP specification would be sent  
25 by -- the GMP specifications for ibrutinib would be sent

Smyth - deposition designations

1 internally by Pharmacyclics personnel of these departments  
2 that you mentioned?

3 "Answer: They would have been involved in QC  
4 and analytical technology, quality assurance, and the  
5 manufacturing teams.

6 "Question: Would the GMP specification include  
7 a specification for crystal form?

8 "Answer: Not all GMP materials are intended  
9 for -- require a solid form analysis.

10 "Question: In your experience, what determines  
11 why a solid state specification is added to a GMP  
12 specification?

13 "Answer: In my experience, it has been added  
14 into a specification when control of a crystal form is  
15 desired for managing the properties of the solid.

16 "Question: In your experience, is a solid state  
17 specification for GMP included if there are issues  
18 encountered with crystal form -- with a crystal form?

19 "Answer: I don't know that I would characterize  
20 it as a problem on an issue. I believe I said it was used  
21 to help assure control and manage the solid state  
22 properties.

23 "Question: Now, after you engaged SSCI in doing  
24 the solid state analysis and polymorph analysis, do you  
25 recall reviewing reports from SSCI?

Smyth - deposition designations

1 "Answer: Yes, as part of my job.

2 "Pharmacyclics engaged SSCI to conduct a  
3 polymorph screen about 2008; right?

4 "Answer: Correct.

5 "Question: Okay. Later on it -- you are aware  
6 of a polymorph screen that was conducted by a company called  
7 Pharmorphix; is that right?

8 "Answer: Yes.

9 "Question: Okay. What I'm handing you is a  
10 Smyth Deposition Exhibit 20. It has got Bates numbers  
11 IMBPCYC05275591 to 92.

12 "Do you have that in front of you?

13 "Answer: Yes.

14 "Question. Okay. And it is a letter. If you  
15 look at the back of the second page, it has your name and  
16 your signature on it; right?

17 "Answer: Yes.

18 "Question: Okay. The front page is dated  
19 March 9th, 2011, and it's to Paul Hirst. It says SAFC  
20 Pharmorphix.

21 "Do you see that?

22 "Answer: Yes.

23 "Question: Okay. If you look at the second  
24 page of the letter, at the top there's a sentence that  
25 discusses another potential polymorph has been observed.



Smyth - deposition designations

1 "Do you see that?

2 "Answer: Yes.

3 "Question: Okay. It is referred to as unknown  
4 B material.

5 "Do you see that?

6 "Answer: I see the phrase unknown B material.

7 "Question: Okay. Do you know whether  
8 Pharmacyclics referred to that Unknown B material ultimately  
9 as polymorph form B of ibrutinib?

10 "Answer: I don't believe so. I believe that  
11 the DSC onset at 135 degrees -- that that polymorph was, I  
12 think, designated form C.

13 "Question: Okay. Are you -- how good is your  
14 recollection?

15 "Answer: As I said, I think. I am not  
16 100 percent sure.

17 "Question: Did Pharmacyclics provide you with  
18 those proposed tests and studies for the polymorph study?

19 "Answer: As I stated about our work with SSCI,  
20 we always after a submission of request for proposal -- we  
21 would have a teleconference to discuss the project and start  
22 aligning on the tests, the solvents, anything else related  
23 to the project that we felt was needed to be discussed and  
24 agreed upon.

25 "Question: I've handed you what has been marked

Smyth - deposition designations

1 Smyth Deposition Exhibit Number 24. It has Bates number  
2 IMBPCY05252966 to 037.

3 "Do you have that in front of you?

4 "Answer: I do.

5 "Question. Thierry Bonnaud? Do you see the  
6 name to the right?

7 "Answer: Yes.

8 "Question: Do you know who he is?

9 Answer. Thierry was one of the project leaders  
10 on most of the studies we conducted with Pharmorphix.

11 "Question: You interacted with him when it came  
12 to the polymorphism studies; correct?

13 "Answer: We had interactions with him, yes.

14 "Question: That one is dated February 28, 2012.  
15 That is actually a real date; right?

16 "Answer: Yes.

17 "Question: Do you recognize this as a report  
18 that Pharmorphix gave to Pharmacyclics detailing the  
19 polymorph study that Pharmorphix ran?

20 "Answer: This is a report on one of those  
21 studies that they conduct over the years. Yes.

22 "Question: Okay. Let me ask you again to go  
23 back to the patent.

24 "Do you have that?

25 When I say the patent, I mean Exhibit 4, the

1 '753 patent.

2 "Do you have that?

3 "Answer: I see Exhibit 4. Yes.

4 "Question: In the front, there's -- when I say  
5 the front, it is a few pages in. There's a Figure 1.

6 "Do you see that?

7 "Answer: I see Figure 1. Yes.

8 "Question: There's a number of figures after  
9 that, Figures 2 through 16.

10 "Do you see those?

11 "Answer: Yes.

12 "Question: Do you know who supplied the data  
13 that went into those figures?

14 "Answer: We gathered data from reports and  
15 submitted them to the patent agents. Erick and I did.

16 "Question: Do you know where the data came  
17 from?

18 "Answer: The data was -- not all of it. I  
19 expect that a majority of it came from the Pharmorphix work,  
20 if not all, but I don't know.

21 "(Exhibit 25 was marked for identification.)

22 "Question: What I'm handing you is Smyth  
23 deposition Exhibit Number 25, and it has Bates numbers  
24 IMBPCYC05316316 to 320.

25 "Do you have that in front of you?

Smyth - deposition designations

1 "Okay. It is an e-mail chain, but I am  
2 focusing on the second e-mail on the front page from Thierry  
3 Bonnaud to Erick Goldman.

4 "Do you see that?

5 "Answer: Yes.

6 "Question: Dear Erick, find attached the data  
7 as requested for the patent.

8 "Do you see that?

9 "Answer: Yes.

10 "Question: That is from Pharmorphix; right?

11 "Answer: Yes.

12 "Question: That is consistent with what you  
13 thought, which is Pharmorphix supplied the data for the  
14 figures inside the patent?

15 "Answer: I didn't state that I believe they had  
16 submitted all of the data. I said they likely submitted  
17 most of it, if not all, but I don't know how much they  
18 submitted or when the data went into the actual application.

19 "Question: What I'm handing you is marked Smyth  
20 Deposition Exhibit 26, and it has Bates numbers  
21 IMBPCYC05316321 to 329.

22 "Do you have that in front of you?

23 "Answer: Yes.

24 "Question: If you go back to the previous  
25 exhibit, do you see that there's an attachment to the e-mail

## Smyth - deposition designations

1 at the top?

2 "Do you see underneath e-mail, it says  
3 attachments?

4 "Answer: Yes.

5 "Question: Do you see the document in front of  
6 you, the Exhibit 26?

7 "Answer: I see Exhibit 26, yes.

8 "Question: Okay. This is data that Pharmorphix  
9 would have supplied to you; correct?

10 "Answer: They would have supplied to Erick, and  
11 we would have -- we would have reviewed it together.

12 "Question: I am handing you a document marked  
13 as Smyth Exhibit 28.

14 "Is that an e-mail chain that you were part of  
15 on June 6th, 2008?

16 "Answer: It looks that way, yes.

17 "Question: I'd like to focus on the first  
18 e-mail in the chain.

19 Is that an e-mail from you to Dave Engers, Brett  
20 Cowant and Jing Teng?

21 "Answer: It looks that way, yes.

22 "Question: Those individuals were from SSCI; is  
23 that correct?

24 "Answer: SSCI.

25 "Question: Sorry. SSCI.

Smyth - deposition designations

1 "Aptuit owned SSCI; is that correct?

2 "Answer: SSCI was an Aptuit company based on  
3 the e-signature of Brett Cowans, so, yes.

4 "Question: In your e-mail you refer to an IND  
5 for PCI-32765. Is that Investigational New Drug filing with  
6 the FDA?

7 "Answer: Yes.

8 "Question: You then state as such, we are  
9 working on the CMC sections which discuss crystal forms.

10 "Do you see that?

11 "Answer: Yes.

12 "Question: Why were you discussing crystal  
13 forms in the CMC section of the IND?

14 "Answer: I don't have an exact answer other  
15 than it was a section that we included since it was likely a  
16 specification of the material to control for crystal form.

17 "Question: Why was Pharmacyclics interested in  
18 controlling for the crystal form of ibrutinib?

19 "Answer: Because we found that there were  
20 multiple polymorphs during our development work, and we  
21 wanted to make sure we controlled for the most stable form.

22 "Question: Why did Pharmacyclics want to have  
23 the most stable crystalline form for ibrutinib in its drug  
24 product?

25 "Answer: I didn't say anything about drug

1 product. I only worked on the API. The goal was to have  
2 the most physically and chemically stable form, and that's  
3 what our goal was.

4 "Question: Obviously, you were going to use it  
5 in a drug product for trials; right?

6 "Answer: It was going into drug product for  
7 trials. Yes.

8 "Question: That's why you file an IND -- is to  
9 do a trial; is that correct?

10 "Answer: You file an IND to get into clinical  
11 trials, yes.

12 "Question: Why was Pharmacyclics interested in  
13 including the most stable crystalline form of ibrutinib in  
14 the product used in its clinical trials?

15 "Answer: We wanted the most stable crystal form  
16 possible, both chemically and physically, so that there was  
17 no degradation in storage.

18 "Question: Would you agree that the desire to  
19 have an active drug ingredient that has good stability  
20 during storage is generally considered desirable to drug  
21 developers in that time frame?

22 "Answer: In my experience, that is a common  
23 goal of projects I've worked on.

24 "Question: Do you know when in time you came to  
25 call a particular form as form A?

1           "Answer: It was, I believe, after the SSCI work  
2 was done that we had contracted with them.

3           "Question: Why did you ascribe whatever form  
4 you ascribed form A to that name?

5           "Answer: I believe that came out of their  
6 internal nomenclature for a sample. I don't know where that  
7 originated other than that.

8           "Question: In 2008, Pharmacyclics had SSCI  
9 perform that polymorphic screen; correct?

10          "Answer: That was in 2008, yes.

11          "Question: During that time, they identified  
12 what they called form A; is that correct?

13          "Answer: They labeled something it was  
14 identified, yes, later as form A. They're the ones who gave  
15 that designation.

16          "Question: The Pharmorphix polymorph screening  
17 was intended to be a more robust polymorphic screen relative  
18 to the SSCI screen; is that correct?

19          "Answer: Our intention was to do a more  
20 thorough study, yes.

21          "Question: You are in Exhibit 24?

22          "Answer: I have that in front of me.

23          "Question: It is hard when you are coordinating  
24 with different -- okay. That's why.

25          "Let's turn to page 972.



Smyth - deposition designations

1 "Answer: In Exhibit 24?

2 "Question: Yes.

3 If you could turn to the last paragraph on page  
4 972, it states the polymorphic screen -- paren -- including  
5 cooling, maturation, anti-solvent, addition, and slow  
6 evaporation -- end paren -- consistently yielded form A,  
7 other than one sample which gave an XRPD diffractogram  
8 pattern differing slightly to form A -- period. This  
9 converted to form A readily at ambient temperature so was  
10 not fully studied.

11 "Do you see that?

12 "Answer: I see that.

13 "Question: Is it consistent with your  
14 recollection that the screening of ibrutinib performed by  
15 Pharmorphix consistently yielded form A?

16 "Answer: I gathered that from reading this  
17 paragraph. Yes.

18 "Question: If we could turn to the next page.

19 In the second paragraph, second sentence, it  
20 states form A was shown to be prepared easily and readily at  
21 elevated temperatures -- paren -- above 25 degrees Celsius  
22 and almost in all cases at 50 degrees Celsius end paren --  
23 however, the other forms -- paren -- B and C and newly  
24 identified mono-MIB K solvate -- end paren -- were isolated  
25 when the slurries were exposed to sub-ambient temperatures.

Smyth - deposition designations

1 "Do you see that?

2 "Answer: Yes.

3 "Question: Do you agree that form A was  
4 prepared easily and readily?

5 "Answer: Based on what they state here, yes.

6 "Question: Is that consistent with your  
7 experience in working with crystalline forms of ibrutinib?

8 "Answer: Form A tended to be the predominant  
9 form that was generated. Yes.

10 "Question: In the next paragraph, they say that  
11 form A was easily prepared from numerous solvents.

12 "Do you see that?

13 "Answer: Yes.

14 "Question: Is that also consistent with your  
15 experience in dealing with crystalline forms of ibrutinib in  
16 varying solvents?

17 "Answer: Based on the study and the report  
18 here, yes. It says that.

19 "Question: Is that also consistent with your  
20 experience and recollection of polymorphic screening of form  
21 A for executing of ibrutinib?

22 "Answer: Form A was always the predominant form  
23 that we saw, so, yes.

24 "Question: Was the purpose of this study to try  
25 and get as many -- identify as many polymorphic forms of

1     ibrutinib as they could?

2             "Answer: That was a stated purpose, yes.

3             "Question: To do that, they used an amorphous  
4     form of ibrutinib at the beginning of the studies; correct?

5             "Answer: Correct.

6             "Question: With that same goal of identifying  
7     new and different polymorphic forms of ibrutinib, they also  
8     used multiple solvents under various conditions; is that  
9     correct?

10            "Answer: Yes.

11            "Question: Do you know if there's any other  
12     reason to use an amorphous state of the drug as a starting  
13     point for polymorphic screens beyond improving the  
14     likelihood that you get a variety of forms?

15            "Answer: I recall the discussions around making  
16     sure that the amorphous form was used to reduce the chance  
17     of crystalline forms acting as seeds in these studies.

18            "Question: Would a crystalline form, acting as  
19     a seed, tend to end up with that finished product from the  
20     test being the same thing you started with?

21            "Answer: Seed would likely result in that form  
22     being generated.

23            "Question: If the sample fully dissolved, would  
24     that still be a concern?

25            "Answer: You would have to determine how

1 completely dissolved it was to have confidence that there's  
2 nothing left behind.

3 "Question: If you could jump down to page 011,  
4 the conclusions section of the report, in the first  
5 paragraph in the second sentence, they state, form A was the  
6 most readily prepared crystalline form, prepared from  
7 numerous solvents using various techniques; is that correct?

8 "Answer: It reads as such.

9 "Question: You agree with that statement;  
10 correct?

11 "Answer: I recall from the work that I've just  
12 reviewed in here and seen and what I remember is, yes, that  
13 was accurate.

14 "Question: The next paragraph they indicate in  
15 the last sentence the ease to controllable produce form A  
16 was also a significant advantage over forms B and C, which  
17 were difficult to reproduce confidently and would risk  
18 conversion to the more stable form A; is that correct?

19 "Answer: That's what it reads.

20 "Question: Do you agree with that sentence?

21 "Answer: From what I remember of this study,  
22 that was correct.

23 "Question: In the last paragraph they state  
24 form A was proven to be the most easily prepared with  
25 control when using the appropriate solvents and was stable

1 with the highest melting temperature of all the forms  
2 identified; therefore, form A was recommended as the ideal  
3 crystalline form to progress with in development, in the  
4 solvents and conditions previously stated.

5 "Do you see that?

6 "Answer: I see that.

7 "Question: Do you agree with that conclusion?

8 "Answer: Yes.

9 "Question: Do you recall forms B and C  
10 converting to form A during storage or during the  
11 experiments that were performed involving forms B and C?

12 "Answer: I'd have to review the data. I think  
13 there may have been some conversion studies that saw that  
14 occurring.

15 "Question: Do you recall any issues of form A  
16 converting to a different form?

17 "Answer: Not that I recall.

18 "Question: Outside of that, do you recall you,  
19 David Wirth, or Mr. Goldman ever trying to identify peaks  
20 that differentiated between the different forms of ibrutinib  
21 that you had identified?

22 "Answer: As a practice, we did not focus on  
23 single peaks as identifiers alone.

24 "Question: How about two or three peaks?

25 "Answer: It was our -- my practice for sure to

## Smyth - deposition designations

1 use as many peaks as possible in a comparison to a known  
2 standard to identify whether a sample was a certain form or  
3 not.

4 "Question: Okay. For the record, Dr. Smyth is  
5 looking at Exhibit 5, the '455 patent.

6 If we could turn to column 3, in the paragraph  
7 beginning at about line 10 -- 9 or 10 in the second  
8 sentence -- in that paragraph there's a reference to  
9 characteristic peaks of form A.

10 "Do you know who identified those peaks as being  
11 characteristic of form A?

12 "Answer: I don't know what individual would  
13 have called those as such.

14 "Question: Do you think it was any of you,  
15 David Wirth, or Mr. Goldman?

16 "Answer: As I said, I don't know who actually  
17 identified those as characteristic.

18 "Question: Did you have any involvement with  
19 forms D through F?

20 "Answer: I was involved in the technical team  
21 interacting with the third party that labeled those as D, E  
22 and F at the time.

23 "Question: You are referring to form A when you  
24 refer to the free base polymorphic form; right?

25 "Answer: That is the form that we went forward

1 with in the clinical studies.

2 "Question: All right.

3 Dr. Smyth, I've just handed you Smyth  
4 Exhibit 37. It is labeled Bates IMBPCYC05622162.

5 "Do you have the document in front of you?

6 "Answer: Yes.

7 "Question. Have you seen this document before?

8 "Answer: It looks somewhat familiar. Yes.

9 "Question: Is it an internal Pharmacyclics  
10 report; correct?

11 "Answer: It is an internal of document, yes.

12 "Question: Okay. It reads micronized ibrutinib  
13 form A is the active ingredient in ibrutinib capsule, 140  
14 milligram, which is in clinical development at  
15 Pharmacyclics.

16 "Do you see that?

17 "Answer: Yes.

18 "Question: Do you agree with that statement?

19 "Answer: At the time it appears to have been  
20 accurate, yes.

21 "Question: We looked at Exhibit 17 before.

22 "My understanding from your explanation was that  
23 this was a proposed research protocol from SSCI that you  
24 placed comments on.

25 "Do you recall that?

Smyth - deposition designations

1 "Answer: Yes.

2 "Question: Let me ask you to turn to the Bates  
3 numbered, labeled page ending in 621.

4 "Answer: Okay.

5 "Question: Now, under goal one, where it  
6 says perform analytical characterization of material as  
7 received -- do you see that?

8 "Answer: Yes.

9 "Question: The proposal that you received from  
10 SSCI did not include XRPD or DSC as a proposed analytical  
11 technique; is that right?

12 "Answer: Not at that stage, no.

13 "Question. You added them here on the side?

14 "Answer: Yes. That's my handwriting.

15 "Question: Okay. Ultimately, those experiments  
16 were performed; is that correct?

17 "Answer: Yes.

18 "Question: You added those to the experimental  
19 protocol for the studies that you engaged SSCI to do in the  
20 spring of 2008?

21 "Answer: From that part of the study, yes, I  
22 added those analytical techniques.

23 "Question: Finally, let me have you look at  
24 Exhibit 16.

25 "Answer: Okay.



Smyth - deposition designations

1           "Question: If you -- Exhibit 16 was the work  
2 order from SSCI -- excuse me -- for SSCI that we were  
3 looking at earlier; is that right?

4           "Answer: As I recall, this was the work order  
5 that resulted in that proposal.

6           "Question: Okay. Let me turn you to the page  
7 ending in Bates number 20 -- 020. Excuse me.

8           "Answer: Okay.

9           "Question: Under changes, do you see the  
10 paragraph that says, since this protocol is research based,  
11 minor changes in the experimental approach or scope can be  
12 made based on scientific judgment?

13           "Do you see that?

14           "Answer: Yes.

15           "Question: Such changes can be agreed to by  
16 SSCI and Pharmacyclics' scientific contact person via  
17 telephone, facsimile, or e-mail discussions, which will be  
18 recorded at SSCI in the form of contacted reports.

19           "Do you see that?

20           "Answer: Yes.

21           "Question: SSCI I could not make minor changes  
22 to the experimental approach without your approval; correct?

23           "Answer: Correct."

24           (End of videotaped deposition.)

25           THE COURT: Okay. Thank you.

1 All right. What's next? Thank you. All right.  
2 What's next?

3 MR. ABHYANKAR: Thanks, Judge Connolly. We're  
4 now done with the deposition clips for the polymorph  
5 patents. We are going to move to a different technology  
6 area now.

7 THE COURT: Okay.

8 MR. ABHYANKAR: And Sandoz intends to call Dr.  
9 Maureen Donovan. We're going to talk about the  
10 pharmaceutical formulation patent and specifically the '231,  
11 which is asserted against Sandoz.

12 If I may suggest, I believe it is 10:40. If  
13 this is a good time for a break, we can break and then start  
14 up or we can proceed.

15 THE COURT: What I'm going to do is, we're going  
16 to take a 15-minute break, but what I would like is, I would  
17 like counsel from both sides to give me a five-minute  
18 summary of why what I've heard is significant to the case?  
19 All right.

20 MR. ABHYANKAR: Thank you.

21 THE COURT: We'll be back at 5 of 11:00 Eastern  
22 time. Thanks.

23 MR. ABHYANKAR: Understood. Thank you.

24 (Short recess taken.)

25 - - -

1 (Proceedings resumed after the short recess.)

2 THE COURT: All right. Are you all there, I  
3 think? Can you hear me?

4 All right. Ms. Clayton, tell me very, very  
5 briefly. What is the significance of what I've heard this  
6 morning?

7 MS. CLAYTON: What you've heard this morning is  
8 from two of the inventors on the '548 patent, Your Honor, a  
9 Dr. Smyth and a Dr. Wirth.

10 We believe that that testimony is relevant to  
11 two different issues in this case. The first is related to  
12 the 112 issue -- actually, three issues. 112 issue on  
13 written description. We believe that the testimony shows  
14 that plaintiffs conducted extensive polymorph testing in  
15 advance of filing what eventually became the '548 patent  
16 which has a priority date of June 4, 2012, and that despite  
17 that significant testing, they only discovered and had  
18 identified forms A through F. So the only forms they  
19 actually were in possession of was those forms as of that  
20 date.

21 Secondly, Your Honor, there was some testimony  
22 related to enablement from I believe Dr. Smyth, related to  
23 some seeding experiment testimony, and maybe a couple of  
24 other nuggets in there that I'm forgetting. So there were  
25 maybe a handful of comments that were relevant to enablement

1 and obtaining new crystalline forms.

2 And then, third, we believe that that testimony  
3 shows that for forms A through C of ibrutinib, the  
4 characterization and thus the peaks that are recited in the  
5 '548 patent were not discovered by either Dr. Smyth or  
6 Mr. Wirth. Instead, they were done by a company called  
7 SSCI, and so unknown employees from SSCI should be named as  
8 inventors on the patent.

9 And then, additionally, for forms D and F, which  
10 plaintiffs belatedly in Dr. Myerson's expert report noted  
11 for the first time they thought came within certain of the  
12 claims.

13 THE COURT: Hold up. See, sorry. Go back.  
14 Avoid the clauses. Just get to the right point.

15 MS. CLAYTON: Yes. So --

16 THE COURT: You distracted me. I had it and I  
17 went off. So what's the point?

18 MS. CLAYTON: Yes. So for Pharmorphix, another  
19 third party invented and identified forms D and E and so  
20 they should also be named as inventors on the '548 patent  
21 and they are not.

22 THE COURT: Okay. Your first point is a 112  
23 point.

24 MS. CLAYTON: Correct.

25 THE COURT: And 112 with a couple clauses.

1 What's the first 112 point?

2 MS. CLAYTON: 112, written description.

3 THE COURT: Right.

4 MS. CLAYTON: This testimony shows the only  
5 forms they were in possession of, which is the standard for  
6 written description as of June 4th, 2012, were forms A  
7 through F.

8 THE COURT: Okay.

9 MS. CLAYTON: A through F. Yes, Your Honor.

10 THE COURT: Your second 112?

11 MS. CLAYTON: Our second point on enablement,  
12 Your Honor, there are just some admissions in these and,  
13 frankly, Your Honor, I apologize. I can't remember them off  
14 the top of my head.

15 THE COURT: That's okay.

16 MS. CLAYTON: That go to establishing some of  
17 the factors related to undue experimentation and showing  
18 that there would be undue experimentation required.

19 THE COURT: That makes sense. Okay. All right.

20 Mr. Gutman, do you have anything to add to that?

21 MR. GUTMAN: Yes, I do, Your Honor. So  
22 yesterday you heard testimony from Dr. Swift that the claims  
23 of the '455 crystalline form patents are obvious in view of  
24 the prior art, including the '444 patent.

25 The testimony that you heard today from doctors

1 Smyth and Wirth, who are both named inventors on the '444  
2 patent, are consistent with and further support Dr. Swift's  
3 opinions that the claims of the '455 patent are invalid for  
4 obviousness.

5 More particularly, you heard testimony from Drs.  
6 Smyth and Wirth that consistent with Dr. Swift's testimony,  
7 that a person of ordinary skill in the art would have been  
8 motivated to do a polymorph screen, especially for  
9 pharmaceutical products in order to obtain and identify the  
10 most stable crystal form.

11 You also heard testimony from Drs. Smyth and  
12 Wirth that the most stable crystalline form was form A and  
13 that it was easily and consistently obtained, and that even  
14 when they obtained other crystalline forms, such as forms B  
15 and C, those converted to form A.

16 So the argument is in total, that testimony  
17 supports the analysis conducted by Dr. Swift with respect to  
18 obviousness, that one of ordinary skill in the art would  
19 have been motivated to obtain form A, and they would have  
20 had a reasonable expectation of success at obtaining form A.

21 THE COURT: Okay. Thank you. All right. Mr.  
22 Sipes?

23 MR. SIPES: Your Honor, we disagree on the  
24 significance.

25 THE COURT: Go ahead.

1           MR. SIPES: To begin, we do agree on one thing.  
2       This is the testimony of the inventors and that's very  
3       important because the law is quite clear that, in fact, the  
4       path that the inventors took to the invention is never a  
5       proper analysis for obviousness. That's just basic law and  
6       it make makes a lot of sense. Otherwise, nothing would be  
7       obvious.

8           What it is relevant to, we believe, is  
9       understanding what they did and what they thought they were  
10      putting into their patent application, and in particular,  
11      you heard testimony, one, I think, that they developed a  
12      very robust path for the production of particularly  
13      crystalline form A, which I think, I tend to agree, does  
14      tend to show understand enablement that the patents clearly  
15      enable the production of A, but also that they worked with  
16      their form that they developed.

17           Once they had achieved crystalline forms --  
18      you heard a reference, for example, for seeding and whatnot,  
19      that once they had a crystalline form. Remember, the time  
20      frame is very important. Before you have any crystalline  
21      material and after once you've developed the crystalline  
22      material, they worked with the crystalline material to  
23      then develop new crystalline forms, and that is what was  
24      in the literature, too. So it shows, and that they  
25      described that.

1 But candidly, for purposes of 103, the proper  
2 analysis is to look at the prior art, not what the inventors  
3 say. And even for 112 issues such as enablement and written  
4 description, I must disagree with Ms. Clayton. It would be  
5 nice if we could do a written description invention by  
6 peering into the heads of inventors and just examining  
7 what's in their mind. That's not the law. The law is you  
8 read the patent specification and you understand what it  
9 communicates to a person of ordinary skill in the art.

10 So we're not going so far to say because they  
11 said that they really thought of themselves as the inventor  
12 of crystalline ibrutinib, that is there was no crystalline  
13 ibrutinib until they made it. That's not the test. The  
14 test is what the patent application describes.

15 We do think it's significant that as they  
16 recognized, they were the first to crystallize ibrutinib,  
17 but we recognize the focus is on on the application. It's  
18 important that they were the inventors of crystalline  
19 ibrutinib, but we need to look at the application.

20 The reference to these contract laboratories we  
21 think candidly, Your Honor, is a distraction. It is, of  
22 course, true that as a small company, Pharmacyclics did  
23 contact with other companies to assist with the work, but  
24 the question here for invention versus conception and is  
25 everyone is agreeing, we're hearing from the inventors on



1       that.

2               So we actually think, A, the direction, and, B,  
3       it's not really a theory that is properly in the case, but  
4       we don't need to address that now. But we don't deny the  
5       fact that they worked with contract labs in developing  
6       crystalline forms.

7               THE COURT: Let me follow up on that idea of  
8       conception. Okay. So I take it, I mean, it's undisputed  
9       that under patent law, you can patent the genus of a  
10      molecule. Right?

11              MR. SIPES: That's correct, Your Honor.

12              THE COURT: Right. Ms. Clayton, you agree with  
13      that?

14              MS. CLAYTON: I agree with that, Your Honor.

15              THE COURT: Mr. Gutman, you agree with that?

16              MR. GUTMAN: If you have appropriate support.  
17      Yes, Your Honor.

18              THE COURT: All right. So, now, the conception  
19      that a molecule could be embodied in a crystalline form,  
20      right?

21              Are you saying, Mr. Sipes, that just having the  
22      idea, the conception that a particular drug molecule could  
23      have a crystalline form, that that is an invention?

24              MR. SIPES: Not, not alone conceding that  
25      it could be crystalline. I'm saying if you have an

1 invention --

2 THE COURT: Sorry. Let me step back. I'm  
3 asking in the abstract. I'm not asking about this  
4 particular thing. I just want to make sure. Is it your  
5 position that, you know, you've got a molecule and everybody  
6 agrees, you can patent a molecule.

7 MR. SIPES: Right.

8 THE COURT: Let's say the molecule was already  
9 patented, but then somebody said, hey, I just thought about  
10 this. I think that this molecule can take a crystalline  
11 form.

12 Are you telling me that conception is  
13 patentable?

14 MR. SIPES: Yes. If it is the case that the  
15 molecule has been made but only amorphously, so that, in  
16 fact, achieving a crystalline form is an accomplishment and  
17 if it proves that the crystalline form has useful  
18 properties, the invention has to be useful so that you, in  
19 essence, came up with the first crystalline form of a  
20 material that had useful properties, yes.

21 THE COURT: You get the patent?

22 MR. SIPES: You are entitled to a patent on  
23 crystalline material.

24 THE COURT: So hold on.

25 MR. SIPES: The opening --

1           THE COURT: Hold on. I'm sorry. Look, you're  
2 all very good, you know. I'm only cutting to the chase  
3 because I'm not -- it takes me awhile to get things. I  
4 think that's pretty clear and I'm sorry about that, but a  
5 lot to master for me.

6           I want to cut to where I'm thinking, if you  
7 don't mind, because I think it has taken me probably a lot  
8 longer than it took you all to figure out the nub of the  
9 dispute, at least some of them here.

10          Let's posit again. I've got a molecule and it  
11 has been patented and it's in amorphous form, but then I  
12 came up. I'm like, wait, wait a second. I can crystallize  
13 this. And I think, as I understand it, the plaintiffs'  
14 position is, hey, if I'm the one who comes up with the first  
15 crystalline form and I get a patent for -- I can get a  
16 patent at that stage for all crystalline forms of that  
17 molecule, that is your position. Right?

18          MR. SIPES: Yes, that is our position, but  
19 there's an important point here. Not only did you conceive  
20 of the crystalline form and make the crystalline form, but  
21 you recognized its useful properties.

22          THE COURT: You know, I'm getting -- I'm giving  
23 you that. That's fine. We'll just posit that. Okay?

24          MR. SIPES: Yes.

25          THE COURT: I don't think that's the nub of the

1       dispute, frankly. I think the defendants will agree with  
2       you. You've got to have usefulness. Right, Ms. Clayton?

3               MS. CLAYTON: Yes. I agree.

4               THE COURT: That is a distraction, frankly, I  
5       think. I want to focus on what I think I have to decide.

6               MR. SIPES: Yes.

7               THE COURT: And I think whereas the defense is  
8       saying, hey, you know what, if you come up with a specific  
9       crystalline form of a patent, you get to get a patent on  
10      that, but you don't get it for any and all crystalline  
11      forms. Is that correct?

12              MS. CLAYTON: That's correct, Your Honor. They  
13      should only be entitled to a patent on the exact crystalline  
14      forms they had discovered as of the filing date.

15              THE COURT: Mr. Gutman, you agree with that?

16              MR. GUTMAN: Not if the prior art says that --

17              THE COURT: That's not the question. This is an  
18      abstract. This is a hypothetical. I'm going to then,  
19      frankly -- I think I know where the law is on that.

20              Okay. So, of course, Mr. Gutman, I'm positing  
21      that it's not obvious. This is a discussion to get to the  
22      heart of the matter.

23              MR. GUTMAN: Yes, Your Honor. Theoretically, I  
24      agree with that.

25              THE COURT: Okay. Thanks.

1 MR. SIPES: Your Honor, here's an analogy that  
2 may help a little bit and if not, I apologize, but I think  
3 it's helpful.

4 Let's go back to the original invention of  
5 ibrutinib or any drug molecule. It's uncontested when they  
6 made it, it came out amorphous, but what they found is it's  
7 a useful molecule. And the claim covers that useful  
8 molecule even if it's used in forms beyond what they found.  
9 For example, crystalline form of the molecule.

10 THE COURT: When you said useful molecule, the  
11 molecule can exist in amorphous or polymorphous form.  
12 Right?

13 MR. SIPES: Correct.

14 THE COURT: There was at some point a patent for  
15 ibrutinib that did not limit it to amorphous or  
16 polymorphous. Is that correct?

17 MR. SIPES: That's the patent at issue in this  
18 case. Claim 10 of the '309 patent claims ibrutinib  
19 regardless of form. You can think of it in one sense as a  
20 genus patent. That molecule, ibrutinib, in any physical  
21 form. It would cover ibrutinib gas. It would cover  
22 ibrutinib liquid.

23 THE COURT: Wait. But I thought -- the way I  
24 broke this down in my own brain was, no, the '309 is  
25 broader. '309 is the compound.

1 MR. SIPES: Correct.

2 THE COURT: The '548 patent -- and I am focusing  
3 right now, at least in my brain, and I'm going to guess Ms.  
4 Clayton agrees with the way I'm focusing. I was focusing on  
5 the '548 patent, the crystalline form patent.

6 MR. SIPES: Correct, Your Honor. I'm trying to  
7 make an analogy, and maybe it was a bad one. You understand  
8 the '309 patent to cover ibrutinib molecules in any physical  
9 form.

10 THE COURT: Again, see, I don't think their  
11 defense is going to dispute that.

12 MR. SIPES: Correct.

13 THE COURT: Hold on, because if you think they  
14 are, but I didn't think they were.

15 MR. SIPES: I don't think so either, Your Honor.

16 THE COURT: Okay. Well, then, we're good, but  
17 I'm focusing on the '548 patent.

18 I think what's going on if I really want to cut  
19 to the heart of the dispute is that you want to say, Mr.  
20 Sipes, that you can not only patent the molecule as a genus,  
21 but you get the patent as a genus, all crystalline forms of  
22 the molecule. That's what you are saying. Right?

23 MR. SIPES: I would say that's a possible claim.  
24 This claim here is more limited than that, but, yes. I'm  
25 saying you're the inventor of crystalline ibrutinib, you get

1 all forms.

2 THE COURT: You get all forms even if you only  
3 disclose in the written description six forms. You're  
4 saying you get all forms if the claim says a crystalline  
5 form. Right?

6 MR. SIPES: Right. There are examples that  
7 we'll put in the record that show that the art recognizes  
8 that. That as the inventor of a crystalline material,  
9 you're entitled to claim a crystalline material.

10 THE COURT: So here's what I want to understand.  
11 So is there case law, you know? I mean, for instance, let's  
12 me ask you this: When did the idea of crystalline form,  
13 when was -- does anybody know when the first crystalline  
14 form was patented?

15 MR. GUTMAN: It was decades ago, Your Honor,  
16 decades. And you only really, I think, you know, as far as  
17 pharmaceutical products have existed because there has been  
18 a motivation to search for crystalline forms. You heard the  
19 inventors themselves say that people were doing polymorphic  
20 screens, you know, over the last 20 years, so --

21 THE COURT: Right.

22 MR. GUTMAN: It has been decades.

23 THE COURT: I'm just curious when you say  
24 decades. I didn't get the impression it has been 50 years.  
25 I got the impression it might be more like 25 years when

1 somebody maybe first started actually patenting crystalline  
2 forms of a molecule. You think it's 50 years? Okay.

3 I've got -- has the Federal Circuit dealt with  
4 this issue of whether you can patent specific crystalline  
5 forms versus any and all crystalline forms? Is there a case  
6 that addresses that issue?

7 MR. SIPES: The leading case, Your Honor, is the  
8 Gruenthal case, which we've talked about, but that was a  
9 different issue. That was really the nonobviousness of  
10 making the first crystalline form.

11 I'd have to -- I'm not aware of a Federal  
12 Circuit case specifically on a genus of crystalline forms.  
13 There are other Federal Circuit cases on genuses of other  
14 things, like antibodies.

15 THE COURT: Right. I get that.

16 MR. SIPES: But this seems -- well, it's true  
17 that crystals themselves are old. In fact, we're enmeshed  
18 in it now. The idea of different crystalline forms and  
19 polymorphs is actually relatively recent.

20 THE COURT: That's what I thought. In fact, you  
21 know, I read somewhere, and, you know, I'm not going to base  
22 my ruling on it unless one of you brought it up. I've read  
23 actually it wasn't until the HIV drug that somebody realized  
24 that the drug product could exist in various crystalline  
25 forms.



1 Am I way off on that?

2 MR. SIPES: I believe it's Ritonavir.

3 THE COURT: Exactly. I think it's in the mid  
4 '90s, isn't it? It's the mid nine tease?

5 MR. SIPES: Correct. And I wouldn't say that  
6 people didn't know before then that you had different  
7 crystalline forms, but that emphasized the importance of  
8 developing a first form that was stable.

9 THE COURT: Right.

10 MR. SIPES: That's when polymorphic stability in  
11 the pharmaceutical art became a real focus and ibrutinib  
12 talked about this.

13 THE COURT: Okay. So --

14 MR. SIPES: The achievement of the first stable  
15 form.

16 THE COURT: You said Gruenthal you were talking  
17 about. Was that in your opening?

18 MR. SIPES: It's in our opening slides. I  
19 apologize.

20 THE COURT: You don't have to apologize. That's  
21 the problem. I can only digest so much. I think what I'm  
22 digesting now is -- obvious is a very bad word.

23 Let me go back and ask the others. Mr. Gutman,  
24 Ms. Clayton, is there a Federal Circuit case that you would  
25 recommend that I read that addresses either directly or

1 indirectly this idea of can you patent any and all  
2 crystalline forms versus specific crystalline forms only? I  
3 will let Ms. Clayton go first.

4 MS. CLAYTON: So, Your Honor, we have looked.  
5 There is not a single Federal Circuit case that talks about  
6 crystalline forms as a genus, and we actually think that  
7 that demonstrates why this concept makes no sense in the  
8 crystalline art.

9 Now, there are cases where we can draw analogies  
10 even in the antibody context. For example, there's a case,  
11 AbbVie v. Janssen, which is ironic, those are the two  
12 plaintiffs in this case, that we think is very instructive  
13 in terms of why there is lack of written description here.  
14 Again, it's not exactly in this art. Basically, we do think  
15 it's instructive to the Court in terms of how the written  
16 description analysis should be conducted here.

17 THE COURT: Okay. Mr. Gutman, any case that you  
18 would point to me?

19 MR. GUTMAN: None that says as a matter of law,  
20 someone is entitled to a genus.

21 THE COURT: Okay.

22 MR. GUTMAN: Of a crystalline form. I think  
23 it's a sense of inquiry. I think it just depends on the  
24 facts.

25 THE COURT: All right. Now, the other thing

1 was, I was kind of recalling back to one of the Markman  
2 hearings. The problem is there were multiple ones in this  
3 case. And was there an '889 patent involved in the case at  
4 one point?

5 MS. CLAYTON: Not in the Sandoz case, Your  
6 Honor.

7 MS. ANDERSEN: Yes, Your Honor, but it has been  
8 quite a while since that patent was involved in the case.

9 THE COURT: All right. Well, I don't know if it  
10 was the '889 patent, and I thought this was Sandoz, not  
11 Alvogen. But I thought at some point, one of the defendants  
12 wanted me to limit my construction of crystalline form to  
13 crystalline form A.

14 MS. CLAYTON: The defendants collectively  
15 previously asked to limit to form A because the two peaks  
16 that are recited in those claims are only listed as  
17 characteristic for form A.

18 Your Honor said that because it talked about  
19 other embodiments, namely, A through F, you didn't think  
20 that that limitation was appropriate.

21 THE COURT: Right. I didn't think it was clear  
22 and unequivocal and I still don't. What I want to ask you:  
23 If I had adopted your construction, that we would not be  
24 in -- you would not have a 112 argument. Is that right?

25 MS. CLAYTON: Correct, Your Honor. That's

1 correct.

2 THE COURT: All right. I'm just curious. You  
3 think that's the better construction? I should have  
4 construed the patent to limit it to form A than deal with  
5 this invalidity issue? That would take the invalidity issue  
6 off the table. Right?

7 MS. CLAYTON: So I do believe that form A is  
8 the correct construction because the only form that has  
9 those two characteristics identified in the specification  
10 is form A.

11 Plaintiffs have pointed to little blips on the  
12 patterns to say that other forms, namely, forms D, F and C  
13 also have some of those peaks. We didn't think that that  
14 was an issue really worth disputing here, so I do think the  
15 better construction is A, but certainly, it shouldn't be  
16 broader than A through F.

17 THE COURT: And I'm just wondering, the  
18 plaintiffs, you have not changed your position, have you,  
19 during the course of this trial? Maybe we would be better  
20 off construing the patent as limited to form A.

21 MR. SIPES: No. And, in fact, Your Honor, we  
22 think this is an important issue and it's an important issue  
23 in this case and, candidly, I think, ultimately, it's an  
24 important issue for the pharmaceutical industry.

25 THE COURT: That's my sense. Always my

1 instincts are not to have to decide something I don't have  
2 to decide. Okay.

3 MR. SIPES: Your Honor, I wish I could make the  
4 case earlier. Unfortunately, it turns out to be a very  
5 important case.

6 THE COURT: No. That's all right. Okay. Well,  
7 look, that was very helpful to me. Again, my apologies.  
8 You know, there's a lot of good advocacy, but sometimes it's  
9 just too much to digest. And I harken back to your  
10 openings. I'm sure you gave me tons of stuff that is only  
11 now becoming apparent to me, the significance of it.

12 So all right. Where do we go next?

13 MR. SIPES: Thank you, Your Honor.

14 MS. CLAYTON: Your Honor, at this time Sandoz  
15 would call Dr. Maureen Donovan to the stand. And Mr.  
16 Abhyankar will be conducting that examination.

17 THE COURT: All right. Thank you.

18 ... DR. MAUREEN DONOVAN, having been duly  
19 affirmed as a witness, was examined and testified as  
20 follows ...

21 THE COURT: Go ahead, counsel.

22 MR. ABHYANKAR: Thank you, Your Honor.

23 BY MR. ABHYANKAR:

24 Q. Good morning, Dr. Donovan.

25 A. Good morning.

Donovan - direct

1 Q. By whom are you employed?

2 A. The University of Iowa.

3 Q. And what is your current position at the University of  
4 Iowa?

5 A. I'm currently Professor of Pharmacy.

6 Q. And before we discuss your opinions, I'd like to talk  
7 a little bit about your background. Could you please put up  
8 DTX-2391.

9 Dr. Donovan, what is this document?

10 A. This is a copy of my C.V. submitted in this case.

11 Q. Does this accurately reflect your academic and  
12 professional history?

13 A. Yes, it does.

14 Q. Great. And have you prepared demonstratives that will  
15 assist with your testimony today?

16 A. Yes, I have.

17 Q. Can we pull up slide 2? Dr. Donovan, can you briefly  
18 give us the highlights of your education?

19 A. Sure. I completed my Bachelor's degree in Pharmacy  
20 from the University of Minnesota. I went on to my graduate  
21 studies at the University of Michigan and completed a Ph.D.  
22 in pharmaceuticals and then went on to my first academic  
23 position at the University of Iowa.

24 Q. Great?

25 THE COURT: Dr. Donovan, sorry to interrupt.

Donovan - direct

1 Have you testified in my courtroom before?

2 THE WITNESS: To be honest, I can't remember. I  
3 don't -- I don't think I have.

4 THE COURT: Okay. All right. Thanks. Sorry to  
5 interrupt.

6 MR. ABHYANKAR: No problem.

7 BY MR. ABHYANKAR:

8 Q. So what academic positions have you held at the  
9 University of Iowa up you until now?

10 A. I started as an assistants professor. I worked my way  
11 up the ranks to professor and that's the title I currently  
12 hold. And during the time that I've been at the University  
13 of Iowa, I've had several administration -- administrative  
14 positions also.

15 So for a period of time I was division head of  
16 the Division of Pharmaceuticals and Translational  
17 Therapeutics. I most recently served as the associate dean  
18 for undergraduate education in College Pharm.

19 Q. In your work as a professor, have you had a particular  
20 area of research that you've been more interested in than  
21 others?

22 A. Yes. So my research interests all the way from  
23 actually undergraduate studies is in the mechanisms of drug  
24 absorption, and as a pharmaceutical scientist, I joined my  
25 interest in material sciences and formulation with that

Donovan - direct

1 interest in drug absorption to defining and determining ways  
2 of optimizing formulations to improve or control drug  
3 absorption.

4 Q. And is one of those research areas in the intranasal  
5 field?

6 A. Yes. My Ph.D. dissertation was on an effective nasal  
7 absorption, and I've continued to do research in the area of  
8 nasal formulation, nasal absorption. And I do that -- in  
9 many ways I look at a number of delivery sites, routes of  
10 administration, each of them different. Each of them have  
11 particular characteristics that make them interesting and  
12 useful and sometimes compare the positive or negative  
13 aspects of a particular site to any other site. In  
14 particular, most commonly delivered sites like the  
15 gastrointestinal tract or like IV therapy.

16 Q. And when you say delivery sites like the  
17 gastrointestinal tract, are you referring to oral  
18 pharmaceutical formulations or drugs?

19 A. Yes. So anything -- anything that gets to the  
20 gastrointestinal tract, typically, that's through the mouth.  
21 But gastrointestinal tract involves the stomach and  
22 intestines. Oral delivery is actually broader than that  
23 because it involves the oral cavity, too.

24 Q. But that has been a part of your research since you  
25 start at the University of Iowa?



Donovan - direct

1 A. Yes, it has. I mean, again, I typically compare -- if  
2 I'm working in nasal delivery or topical, oftentimes I'm  
3 going to be comparing my results to the absorption  
4 characteristics of a similar compound, gastrointestinally or  
5 or transporters or cells, what we're look at.

6 Just compare gastrointestinal absorption in many  
7 cases, not all, because it's not relevant in all. But as a  
8 comparator site, there's a lot of information that  
9 gastrointestinal absorption in particular, so it makes it a  
10 prime candidate for comparison.

11 Q. Throughout the course of your career, have you  
12 presented at lectures and seminars related to pharmaceutical  
13 formulations?

14 A. Sure. I've given invited presentations at  
15 international national meetings and national meetings and  
16 academic institutions, both internationally and in the  
17 United States, in the pharmaceutical industry numbers of  
18 times, so, yes, I've given a number of presentations.

19 Q. What about published articles in peer-reviewed  
20 journals? Have you published any papers related to  
21 pharmaceutical formulation?

22 A. Yes, I've published over 50 papers that are related to  
23 drug absorption or pharmaceutical formulation. I have over  
24 100 published abstracts in the same area.

25 Q. And are you the member of any national committee?

Donovan - direct

1 A. Yes, I am. Right now I serve as a member of the FDA  
2 Advisory, Advisory Committee on Pharmaceutical Sciences and  
3 Clinical Pharmacology.

4 Q. Approximately how many years of experience do you  
5 have in the study and the design of pharmaceutical  
6 formulations?

7 A. I have about 35 years of experience.

8 Q. And that includes experience with, as we discussed,  
9 oral pharmaceutical formulations?

10 A. Yes.

11 Q. Have you had experience formulating capsules and  
12 tablets and other types of oral pharmaceutical formulations?

13 A. Yes, I have.

14 Q. And are you familiar with formulation design of drugs  
15 that have different crystalline forms?

16 A. I am familiar with the need to understand crystalline  
17 form of the drug substance and that there are formulation  
18 issues involved in formulating drugs that are, that have  
19 polymorphic form.

20 Q. And in your experience, do you also have experience  
21 with formulating drugs that are considered poorly soluble?

22 A. Yes. I have a propensity to pick poorly soluble  
23 compounds when I'm choosing model compounds for my own  
24 experimental system, so I've had a lot of experience with  
25 poorly soluble materials.

Donovan - direct

1 Q. And have you consulted with pharmaceutical companies  
2 on formulation design or development?

3 A. I have. A number of times I've been invited to meet  
4 with the pharmaceutical industry at times where they just  
5 want general information about routes of administration and  
6 selection of routes. When they have a particular project in  
7 mind, we may be discussing formulation aspects or selection.  
8 That would be appropriate for a formulation.

9 Q. Thank you.

10 MR. ABHYANKAR: At this time, Your Honor, Sandoz  
11 would like to tender Dr. Donovan as an expert in the area of  
12 pharmaceutical formulation.

13 MS. ANDERSEN: No objection, Your Honor.

14 THE COURT: All right.

15 MR. ABHYANKAR: Let's move to the next slide, 3.

16 BY MR. ABHYANKAR:

17 Q. Dr. Donovan, let's start with an overview of your  
18 testimony. Can you briefly walk through what we'll be  
19 discussing today?

20 A. Sure. What I'm going to start out with is a bit of a  
21 background on pharmaceutical formulations, the preparations  
22 described as formulations and their outcome as dosage forms  
23 just to give the Court some idea of what it is these terms  
24 mean. And then I'm going to talk a little bit about the  
25 person of ordinary skill in the art, the typical training

Donovan - direct

1 and background and so forth of somebody who is considered a  
2 pharmaceutical formulator. And then I'm going to discuss my  
3 opinions about the '231 patent and that my opinion that it's  
4 invalid for lack of written description and that it's  
5 invalid for lack of enablement.

6 Q. So let's start with the background on formulations,  
7 and for the benefit of those like me who are not trained as  
8 formulators, can you just describe for us what a  
9 pharmaceutical formulation is?

10 A. So a pharmaceutical formulation is the drug substance  
11 itself, the molecule that is the active drug, and all of the  
12 other materials that we combine with that drug substance to  
13 give the final, if you call package of drug that we're going  
14 to administer to the human. So the final tablet or capsule  
15 or cream or patch or gel or any number of various types of  
16 ways that we present the drug substance so that it works and  
17 gives the effect that is desired.

18 Q. Did you create a demonstrative that walks through the  
19 development process that we just discussed?

20 A. Yes, I did.

21 Q. If we can pull up slide 5, please.

22 Dr. Donovan, can you walk us through what we're  
23 seeing here on this slide?

24 A. Sure. So this slide is meant to give an idea, sort of  
25 the general category of activities that are used when

Donovan - direct

1 somebody is going to take a drug substance and formulate it  
2 into the drug product.

3 And there are, you know, there are lots of  
4 things that go in each of those steps. And at this point,  
5 really what I want to make clear is that formulation design  
6 is actually -- and formulation itself is actually an  
7 iterative process and that's why the arrows go both ways  
8 between all of the boxes.

9 And we could have made this even more  
10 complicated by having them move all over the place. But I  
11 step forward. I do testing. I get information about what  
12 I'm doing and that may cause me to either say that was what  
13 I expected and that's the characteristic I'm trying to build  
14 into my formulation and drug products, and I'm going to keep  
15 moving forward or it may cause me to say, that's not going  
16 to work. That's not going to meet my drug product needs,  
17 and as a result I am going to have to go back, get different  
18 information, test different things to then come up with a  
19 next step. So it's a very iterative process is really what  
20 the main point of the slide at this time is.

21 Q. And I notice the title of the slide refers to oral  
22 formulations. Is there a reason you have focused on oral  
23 formulations for this development process?

24 A. Yes. I focused on oral formulations because the '231  
25 patent is focused on oral formulations.

Donovan - direct

1 Q. So let's walk through each of these. Let's start with  
2 the top.

3 Can you explain the design process at the  
4 beginning?

5 A. Sure. So as a formulator, I get involved in drug  
6 product development when there's a drug substance identified  
7 that has a particular therapeutic effect that is desired.  
8 And we need to be able to present it to humans. And so the  
9 formulator again is in charge of taking that drug substance,  
10 turning it into a material, a product that somebody can  
11 actually administer or take.

12 And so we find out about things, well, first,  
13 what's the dose of this intended agent? How much of drug  
14 substance do we need to deliver? And the disease state  
15 might tell us which of the dosage forms are most practical  
16 or impractical to select.

17 And then, finally, what's the patient population  
18 that's going to be using this or intended to use it, because  
19 that, again, is going to potentially reduce the number of  
20 likely dosage forms that we would select.

21 So as an example, if I -- if my drug substance  
22 and my intended disease state is only a disease of small  
23 children, I have limited numbers of dosage forms that small  
24 children are able to accommodate and so I just, I focus on  
25 those.

Donovan - direct

1           If I have a broader choice, there's more work  
2           that goes into selecting, but at some point in time, I'm  
3           going to select the likely dosage form I'm going to work on  
4           first or a couple back ups or whatever.

5           Q.     And let's turn to slide seven. Can you explain what  
6           we're seeing here with respect to oral formulations?

7           A.     Yes. What I -- I wanted to make the point that a drug  
8           product and the dosage form is a distinct composition. So  
9           with these three pictures, three forms of Advil. The same  
10          drug substance, ibuprofen in all three, but they're  
11          presented in different forms.

12                    So the Advil tablets, the liquid gel system or  
13                    soft gelatin capsule system and the children's suspension  
14                    system. And there are different materials that get used to  
15                    bring about each of those, different production sequences,  
16                    different quality assurance characteristics for each of  
17                    them.

18                   And we'll notice that the tablet and the capsule  
19                   even have the same doseload. Both have 200 milligrams of  
20                   ibuprofen, but the dose load in the suspension is different.  
21                   Different patient population, different dose. It actually  
22                   lends itself to be able to give different doses.

23                   And I apologize that my phone is ringing.

24                   THE COURT: Do you want to go put it on hold?

25                   THE WITNESS: Different doses based on weight

Donovan - direct

1 because you can give different volumes.

2 THE COURT: Do you want to just put it into  
3 voicemail or something or you can answer it and have a  
4 conversation in front of us.

5 THE WITNESS: I live in Iowa. I know what that  
6 call is about. No.

7 BY MR. ABHYANKAR:

8 Q. Just to confirm, on the slide we're looking at here,  
9 these are all considered oral dosage forms or oral  
10 pharmaceutical formulations?

11 A. Yes, they are.

12 Q. And are there more than these kinds of oral dosage  
13 forms available for a formulator to consider when they're  
14 designing drugs?

15 A. There are. There's a tremendous number of potential  
16 oral dosage forms. Again, just a selection of what I refer  
17 to as immediate release dosage forms, they're intended to be  
18 administered and act relatively rapidly.

19 There's a whole -- there's a whole bunch of  
20 other formulations where we use more of the dosage form  
21 itself to control the rate at which the drug gets absorbed  
22 and so forth. So there are far beyond tablet, soft gel and  
23 suspensions or solutions. There's controlled release  
24 tablets. There's a tremendous number of possible oral  
25 dosage forms.



1 Q. Let's just focus with these three examples for now,  
2 but is the approach to designing these different  
3 formulations going to change depending on what they are, the  
4 tablet versus a liquid versus a gel or capsule?

5 A. Certainly, because we use different material joined  
6 with the drug substance to bring about each specific dosage  
7 form, so the approaches are different. Sometimes the  
8 testing is different, the final manufacturing is different  
9 to bring each. To bring each dosage form about requires  
10 different activities and different considerations and  
11 different materials.

12 Q. So let's go back to slide A, the design pathway.  
13 Let's say we go ahead and select our oral dosage form. What  
14 do we do next?

15 A. So the design and the choice of dosage can be done  
16 initially, and then we have to know something about the  
17 chemistry of the drug substance itself, and we're going to  
18 rely on that we probably know some things about the  
19 chemistry already of the materials we're likely to choose to  
20 join with that.

21 So we spend time actually understanding the  
22 chemistry of the drug substance. So we know which  
23 characteristics we might have to build around that not every  
24 drug compound, all of the perfect characteristics that we  
25 need to have it well absorbed and so forth.

1           So we try to add material into the dosage form  
2           that might help with that or we might add materials into the  
3           dosage form that make it even better than it already is. A  
4           number of things that we might be able to consider to do.  
5           But we still need to know the basics about the drug  
6           substance itself. So we conduct what's called  
7           pre-formulation testing.

8           Before we even get to formulation, we're going  
9           to understand the chemical properties and the physical  
10          properties of our drug substance as best we can so that we  
11          know how to design the best acting formulation for the  
12          desired use.

13        Q.     So let's talk about some of these pre-formulation  
14        studies. Turn to slide 9, please. What type of testing do  
15        you consider as a formulator?

16        A.     Okay. So what I've put on the slide is a variety of  
17        what people would consider pre-formulation tests commonly  
18        get done to evaluate the chemical or physical properties of  
19        the drug substance.

20               There are others, but these are certainly the  
21        most -- many of the most common activities and I'm just  
22        going to highlight a couple of them starting with the  
23        aqueous solubility of the material itself. And that's a  
24        really, really important thing for a formulator to know  
25        because one of the cardinal rules of drug absorption is that

1 the drug molecule itself has to be in solution in order for  
2 it to get absorbed.

3 So for gastrointestinal absorption or for nasal  
4 absorption for that matter. My drug molecule has to be in  
5 solution in the liquids that are present at that absorbed  
6 surface, the mucosal surface, my nose or gastrointestinal  
7 tract, wherever. It has got to be in solution.

8 And so the contents of the gastrointestinal  
9 tract are primarily water, some other substances, but we're  
10 going to worry about aqueous water solubility. And because  
11 the gastrointestinal tract has different pH's, stomach, very  
12 acidic in most individuals, and as we move through the rest  
13 of the intestinal tract, more neutral, light in character.  
14 The solubility of drug substances changes as a function of  
15 pH, so I'm going to want to know what the solubility is in  
16 those major characteristic regions of the gastrointestinal  
17 tract also.

18 So solubility is very important. Dissolution  
19 rate is how fast does that material actually dissolve,  
20 because, again, if I want a rapidly acting drug, I like my  
21 dissolution rate to be fast so I can accomplish that. I  
22 want it to go in solution quickly in the environment where  
23 it's going to be absorbed.

24 The partition coefficient tells us the relative  
25 solubility between a liquid-like substance and an

1 aqueous-like substance. So it tells us something about how  
2 well the drug might be absorbed once we present it to the  
3 absorptive membrane.

4 Polymorphism. We've been hearing a lot about  
5 polymorphism. It's certainly important to know about the  
6 drug substance, whether there are polymorphs, which  
7 polymorph is being used. Crystallinity, also an important  
8 characteristic.

9 I'm going to move through the rest of those  
10 details and studies. They're important, but I really want  
11 to focus on chemical stability as a formulator. That's one  
12 of my cardinal goals, is I like my drug product to be stable  
13 and give a product lifetime shelf life of several years,  
14 again, for convenience of our users, that they don't have to  
15 go and get their prescription filled every day because we  
16 didn't make it chemically stable.

17 So chemical stability of the drug itself is  
18 something that that I interrogate during pre-formulation  
19 testing because there may be material that I can include in  
20 my dosage form, inactive ingredients or excipients that we  
21 call them that I can include in the dosage forms itself that  
22 slow down those degradation pathways. It would be nice if  
23 we believe they would eliminate them, but at least slow them  
24 down enough, limit their current that I can actually have  
25 that long shelf life that I desire from my pharmaceutical

1 product.

2 Q. Thanks.

3 And we talked, you talked about polymorphism and  
4 crystallization and aqueous solubility. Is it your  
5 understanding based on your experience that the aqueous  
6 solubility of one crystal form of a drug product, or drug  
7 substance can be different than another?

8 A. Absolutely, certainly. That's a characteristic of  
9 different polymorphic forms, is they have different  
10 solubility characteristics.

11 Q. And based on those differences, does that impact the  
12 design of the formulation that you are looking at?

13 A. Certainly, certainly, because, you know, we need  
14 adequate solubility in the time frame that the drug product  
15 and drug itself are present at the absorptive site so they  
16 can get absorbed. So they can go into solution and get  
17 absorbed. Yes, it's an important part of formulation.

18 Q. Right. So let's go back to the pathway slide, slide  
19 10. You selected the dose form, we've conducted the  
20 pre-formulation tests and now we move to the next step.

21 Can you explain for us what we're doing here?

22 A. Sure. So in the next step, I start to combine my drug  
23 substance with some of the inactive ingredients or the  
24 excipients again that I think might be useful in my  
25 formulation. And the reason I do that, I do that -- I may

Donovan - direct

1 start to build up multiple components and so forth. Each of  
2 my inactive ingredient or excipients is also accountable.  
3 It has properties, too. It has chemical reactivities, too,  
4 and I want to make sure both that my excipients are  
5 compatible with my drug substance, they don't cause things  
6 to happen with my drug substance that I don't want to have  
7 happen and that they're actually adding in the  
8 characteristics that I want them to add into my formulation  
9 and to get me to the desired characteristics of my final  
10 dosage form.

11 So I do some work where I'm identifying  
12 excipients, I'm looking at the combination and what their  
13 behavior is and I'm still thinking about stability and so  
14 forth, but in the combined stage, I'm essentially  
15 interrogating the excipients and the ability to make the  
16 dosage form that I want to be able to make.

17 Q. And can these inactive ingredients or excipients, can  
18 they serve different purposes in a formulation?

19 A. Oh, absolutely. You know, even each material itself  
20 might be able to serve multiple purposes. We have a variety  
21 of excipients that we have choices of and they each have  
22 particular characteristics.

23 Unfortunately, some of them even have  
24 limitations that we then also have to formulate with or  
25 around, that they act so well in one aspect, we continue to

Donovan - direct

1 include them in the formulation, but we know they have some  
2 negative aspect and so we actually have to add some others  
3 potentially or do something with our formulation to try to  
4 counteract that as best as possible.

5 Q. So claim 27 identifies some excipients; right?

6 A. Yes, it does.

7 Q. And so why don't we just pull up JTX-11 and turn to  
8 claim 1.

9 Can you walk us through the types of excipients  
10 that are claimed here?

11 A. Yes. So in claim 1, we'll look at B, C, D and E.  
12 Those are the excipient classifications that are being  
13 described by the claims.

14 So there's a diluent classification and a range  
15 of amounts of materials that we would add a diluent and then  
16 disintegrating agents is another category. Surfactants is a  
17 third category and lubricant as a fourth category. Each of  
18 those categories has multiple agents that are reported to  
19 act in those ways, but in claim 1, it's just describing the  
20 categories of excipients that should be included.

21 Q. So let's talk about those categories. So we can move  
22 to slide 11.

23 Let's start from the top, the diluents. Can you  
24 explain for us what a diluent is and what its function is in  
25 a pharmaceutical formulation?

Donovan - direct

1       A.       Sure. So the diluent itself, and they have it  
2       described on the slide as a filler. It's essentially meant  
3       to bulk up my drug substance into my dosage form. The drug  
4       substance is oftentimes high potency. A few milligrams  
5       worth of drug substance is what I want to administer to my  
6       user, and a few milligrams is way less than a quarter of a  
7       teaspoonful.

8               So those very small amounts of material are very  
9       hard for individuals to manage and dose accurately. We add  
10      some bulk so that they're physically easy to handle and  
11      manipulate and manufacture. The diluent serves that  
12      purpose, to dilute up the active drug substance to give  
13      us enough mass or volume in the dosage form so that it's  
14      handleable and manufacturable and that we can assure that  
15      we have equal doses of drug, too, for each unit that we  
16      desire.

17      Q.       How about the next one, disintegrants. What are they  
18      used for in a pharmaceutical formulation?

19      A.       So disintegrants are used to help with drug  
20      dissolution, and so in the case of an orally administered  
21      drug for the gastrointestinal tract delivery system or  
22      dosage form, we'll take a tablet as an example.

23              You know, I've taken a solid, I've taken  
24      powders, I've compressed them and somebody has swallowed  
25      them. Once it's in the GI tract again, do I want that to be



Donovan - direct

1 rapidly acting? I'd like all of the drug to dissolve a lot  
2 of that as quickly as possible, but in my compact and solid  
3 tablet, that doesn't necessarily happen very quickly off of  
4 the surface of the tablet.

5 So what I do, I include material that causes the  
6 tablet once ingested to break apart into much smaller  
7 pieces. Lots of smaller pieces give me lots of more surface  
8 area and interaction and my drug can dissolve out of those  
9 smaller pieces. Total amount of drug can dissolve. You get  
10 more and faster dissolution from the smaller pieces than  
11 from a single tablet.

12 So we disintegrate the tablet or whatever dosage  
13 form that we put that in to again accomplish that making  
14 smaller pieces so that the drug is more available to be put  
15 into solution.

16 Q. All right. What about surfactants? I see a Dawn  
17 bottle there. Can you explain what surfactant is?

18 A. The Dawn bottle is to show we're all very familiar  
19 with surfactants and we're more and more familiar with  
20 surfactants. They are the materials that are in soaps and  
21 they are included in soaps because in my dish washing  
22 example, they take the grease off my dishes and allow the  
23 grease to be dispersed in water and go away in the case of  
24 Dawn.

25 In the case of a drug substance, a

Donovan - direct

1 low-solubility, hydrophobic water-hating drug substance, my  
2 surfactant is able to interact with that hydrophobic drug  
3 substance and it's able to disperse it into the water  
4 content that in my gastrointestinal tract, for example, and  
5 thus it allows me to get the drug to the -- the absorptive  
6 surface as a molecule that can be absorbed instead of as an  
7 insoluble solid that will just pass through the  
8 gastrointestinal tract.

9 Q. Finally, I see lubricant at the bottom. Can you talk  
10 about what the purpose of a lubricant in a pharmaceutical  
11 formulation is?

12 A. The lubricant is primarily a manufacturing aid. We  
13 make our pharmaceutical dosage forms on sophisticated piece  
14 of equipment. We oftentimes like to make lots of them  
15 rapidly so we can provide the world supply of our drug  
16 product.

17 And the lubricant is added to allow the colors  
18 to flow through those processing pieces of equipment and not  
19 jam them, not get stuck on edges, not jam up the production  
20 equipment and so forth, to leave from being compressed  
21 potentially as a, as a full beautiful tablet compared to a  
22 chipped mess.

23 A number of reasons why we want to keep material  
24 that would have the ability to seize up or gather together  
25 because of frictional forces, we'll add the lubricant in

1       there just to keep the process moving.

2       Q.       How many different types of lubricants are there?

3       A.       Oh, there's quite a few. At least a couple of dozen  
4       types of lubricants that commonly get used and there's  
5       surprising material that we use as pharmaceutical  
6       lubricants. They're not -- they're not -- they're typically  
7       not similar to the kind of lubricants we think of for  
8       automobiles or anything else like that. They're other  
9       substances that give lubricating processes characteristics  
10      in most of our pharmaceutical processing equipment.

11      Q.       And if we could pull up slide 12.

12                   Are these examples here of lubricants that are  
13      described in the '231 patent?

14      A.       Yes. This is a section in the specification that  
15      identifies some suitable lubricants or glidants. You can  
16      see there's a set of long list of materials that have been  
17      identified as having lubricant properties.

18      Q.       Do all of these lubricants behave the same way  
19      when included in the same amount in a pharmaceutical  
20      formulation?

21      A.       No, they don't, because, again, each one of these is a  
22      different chemical substance. They may, in a general  
23      mechanistic standpoint, some of them may act similarly to  
24      others, but, again, each individual material has its own  
25      characteristics and needs to be evaluated based on its own

1 characteristics, both its lubricant characteristics and  
2 whether they are sufficient enough at what concentration we  
3 need and potentially on whether that build in any other  
4 characteristics to our dosage form.

5 Q. And if we can go back to slide 11. Can the choice or  
6 even the combination of these excipients here have an impact  
7 on how the drug ultimately will behave in the body?

8 A. Absolutely. I mean, that is formulation design and  
9 drug dosage form development. It's determining what the  
10 combinations of materials are and the quantities of each of  
11 those materials and maybe even the manufacturing steps, the  
12 order of addition of those to allow us to make the final  
13 product that we desire, that gives the characteristics that  
14 we identify on our drug product to have.

15 Q. And can using different levels or amounts of these  
16 various excipients have an effect on the drug product as  
17 well?

18 A. Sure, absolutely. It's the relative amount of  
19 materials relative to the other material potentially, or the  
20 absolute amount of a specific material also. They all again  
21 lend to the overall characteristics of the now mixture, but  
22 each one of them contributes characteristics and those  
23 characteristics certainly are influenced by the amount that  
24 we include.

25 Q. And focusing on the lubricant at the bottom, can

1     varying the amount of the lubricant, can that have an impact  
2     on the properties of a formulation?

3     A.     Certainly. The amount of lubricant is potentially one  
4     of the challenges that pharmaceutical formulators face.  
5     Again, we need the lubricant. They're a manufacturing aid.  
6     They allow us to actually produce the dosage form that's  
7     designed, but a number of the lubricants are hydrophobic in  
8     nature, so, again, water-hating in nature. It helps them  
9     maybe act well as a lubricant, but they also can give a  
10    hydrophobic nature to our dosage form, and as a result we  
11    start building in a water-hating into the dosage form, which  
12    in most cases is a negative, because, again, we want it to  
13    interact with water so the drug can go in solution so the  
14    drug can get absorbed.

15   Q.     Let's go back to the pathway slide again. Now that  
16   we've identified our excipients in the dosage form, what do  
17   we do next?

18   A.     So we've identified the excipient and we actually  
19   develop and design and test the prototype formulation  
20   combinations that we identify. We make them and we make  
21   them because they're multicomponent mixtures. They often  
22   contain materials that have multi-functions to them and we  
23   actually need to test them to make sure we built in the  
24   performance characteristics that we had intended, and so we  
25   make our formulations, the ones that we think are going to

1 be the best.

2 We learn from the results and we may need to go  
3 back to our combination state and re-evaluate, select  
4 different excipients potentially, or we may be able to move  
5 forward. It's very much a process of testing and evaluating  
6 the results based on what the performance characteristics of  
7 the dosage forms desired had been identified to be.

8 Q. If we can move over to slide 14. Are these some of  
9 the testing criteria that you look at this stage?

10 A. Yes. There's only a few identified. There's more.  
11 Some of them are testing criteria. But these are some of  
12 the key aspects that we almost always look at in a prototype  
13 formulation as we're determining whether we can move  
14 forward.

15 The first one, if it's a dosage form that we  
16 want to disintegrate to enhance the ability of the drug to  
17 dissolve, we're going to look at the disintegration rate.  
18 We do that in the lab. We have systems that have been  
19 developed and accepted that we think have some meaning  
20 regarding how the drug product itself is actually going to  
21 perform and disintegrate in the body. So we need laboratory  
22 testing equipment for the disintegration.

23 The dissolution profile is the rate at which the  
24 drug substance dissolves out of those particles. We have  
25 disintegrants, if we don't include a disintegrant for doing

1 a controlled release.

2 Oral dosage form, we have different criteria for  
3 the rate of drug dissolving that one would look at. But  
4 common testing to evaluate, to make sure that our  
5 formulation is going to give us the solution of drug at the  
6 absorption site that we desire and we also are looking at  
7 evaluating the chemical stability of the drug substance and  
8 of the components we've now added to that to make the dosage  
9 form.

10 And we're also making sure that the whole  
11 composite in the material are physically stable. We don't  
12 want the -- want form changes of our material during the  
13 shelf life. That has been a problem for a number of drug  
14 products, and so we continue to monitor and test the  
15 physical stability of the components in addition to their  
16 actual chemical stability.

17 Q. And, finally, if we can go back to the pathway slide.  
18 Can you briefly describe what the last step is and what we  
19 look to there as formulators?

20 A. Sure. So I've developed a formulation and now I've  
21 developed a formulation that is meeting my test criteria  
22 dissolution rate, disintegration rate, so forth, and  
23 chemical stability for the period of time that I need.  
24 Well, I need to actually test that in my, hopefully, my  
25 human subjects because my laboratory test systems, again,

Donovan - direct

1 are somewhat reflective of what we think might happen, but  
2 we actually need to test that the formulation as made  
3 actually gives the desired performance, that it meets the  
4 blood concentrations that I need at the time I need them to  
5 treat the disease that this whole dosage form and drug  
6 substance are intended for.

7 So we oftentimes end up having to reformulate  
8 based on what we've learned once we've administered the drug  
9 product, that we need to change the formulation, to change  
10 some of the behaviors to actually give the therapeutic  
11 desired performance.

12 Q. Right.

13 MR. ABHYANKAR: Your Honor, we're concluding the  
14 background section. It looks like lunch might be a good  
15 place for a break.

16 THE COURT: Here's what I'm thinking, looking at  
17 your PowerPoint. Do you want to briefly hit definition of  
18 POSA, because I guess you're going to tell me at the end of  
19 the day, it doesn't matter.

20 MR. ABHYANKAR: That's exactly right.

21 THE COURT: Why don't you do that. If you could  
22 do that in less than five minutes?

23 MR. ABHYANKAR: We think we should be able to do  
24 that. Can we move onto the next slide.

25 BY MR. ABHYANKAR:



Donovan - direct

1 Q. And, Dr. Donovan -- actually, let's us pull up slide  
2 17.

3 Do you offer a definition for a person of skill  
4 in the art in this case?

5 A. Yes, I did.

6 Q. Is this a summary?

7 A. Yes. The background of the POSA that I designed and  
8 the POSA has a significant amount of technical and  
9 scientific education, so education in chemistry or  
10 engineering or pharmaceutical sciences primarily, experience  
11 in formulating pharmaceutical products, and then a  
12 familiarity with the excipients or inactive ingredients, so  
13 that they can act as an independent formulator and we can go  
14 back and forth about level of education versus experience  
15 and so forth, but it's that combination of basic education,  
16 experience, understanding of the materials that could be  
17 selected that makes a formulator.

18 Q. And are you aware of plaintiffs' expert, Dr. Williams'  
19 definition of a POSA?

20 A. Yes, I am.

21 Q. And let's pull up the next slide, please. And does  
22 this reflect a summary of his definition in the case?

23 A. It does. It's my summary of his definition, slightly  
24 different than mine.

25 Q. Although different, do your opinions turn on which

1 definition of a POSA the Court adopts?

2 A. No, my opinions do not depend on the other definition.

3 Q. And would you qualify as a POSA? Would you qualify as  
4 a POSA under either definition?

5 A. Yes, I would.

6 Q. Great.

7 THE COURT: Okay. That's a great place to stop.  
8 Good timing. And I will see you all at 1:00 o'clock.

9 MR. ABHYANKAR: Thank you.

10 (Luncheon recess taken.)

11 - - -

12 Afternoon Session, 1:00 p.m.

13 THE COURT: Okay, everyone. Are you all there?

14 MR. ABHYANKAR: Yes, Your Honor.

15 THE COURT: Great. All right. Mr. Abhyankar?

16 MR. ABHYANKAR: Thank you.

17 BY MR. ABHYANKAR:

18 Q. Dr. Donovan, in we could pull up slide 19. I would  
19 like to turn to your opinions regarding written description,  
20 and first I would like to briefly discuss the standards you  
21 applied in this case with respect to written description.

22 So if we could pull up slide 20, please.

23 I understand you are not a lawyer, Dr. Donovan,  
24 so in your own words, can you explain for us what you  
25 understand the standard to be and how you applied it in your

1 analysis in this case?

2 A. Sure. So my understanding of the standard for written  
3 description is that the patent specification has to tell a  
4 POSA that the inventors had invented or possessed the full  
5 scope of the invention or the claim.

6 Q. Right. So let's talk about that invention. If we  
7 could pull up JTX-11, please, of the '231 patent.

8 And I'd like to pull up -- actually, let's just  
9 go to slide 21. Let's pull up claim 27. Thank you.

10 And, Dr. Donovan, just to confirm, is it your  
11 understanding that this claim, claim 27, is the sole claim  
12 of the '231 asserted against Sandoz in this case?

13 A. Yes, that's my understanding. It's a dependent claim  
14 on claim 1.

15 Q. And is claim 27 a dependent or independent claim?

16 A. Yes, it's a dependent claim.

17 Q. What claim does it depend from?

18 A. Claim 1.

19 Q. Looking at this claim here, how would you describe the  
20 scope of this claim?

21 A. Extremely broad. Just reading the first line tells me  
22 that it's very broad, pharmaceutical formulation for oral  
23 administration.

24 Q. So let's start there. If we can move to the next  
25 slide.

Donovan - direct

1                   Can you explain why a pharmaceutical formulation  
2                   for oral administration makes this claim broad?

3           A.       Well, it allows for any possible dosage form or  
4                   delivery form administered via the mouth orally. So all  
5                   forms of tablets and capsules and gels potentially and, you  
6                   know, controlled release, immediate release, any possible  
7                   dosage form that I would put into the mouth could be or is  
8                   part of the invention.

9           Q.       And does the '231 patent list a number of examples of  
10                   oral dosage forms that would fall within the scope of claim  
11                   27?

12          A.       Sure. They give, you know, twentyish or so examples  
13                   and some of their examples are broad categories, that there  
14                   would be far more subsets of those from a formulator's  
15                   definition of the dosage form.

16          Q.       So if we could pull up JTX-11, the '231 patent, column  
17                   43. JTX-11, please, column 43.

18                   Is this the description you were referring to,  
19                   Dr. Donovan, about the dosages of oral dosage forms that  
20                   would fall within the scope of 27, claim 27?

21          A.       Yes, it is.

22          Q.       Are these all of the oral dosage forms that would have  
23                   been available to a POSA as of June 4th, 2012?

24          A.       No. There are plenty of additional possible oral  
25                   dosage forms beyond what's listed in this column.

1 Q. All right. And if we could turn back to slide 22,  
2 please. Is there anything else about this claim apart from  
3 the fact that it covers any oral dosage form that makes it  
4 broad in your opinion?

5 A. Yes. Even the following points A through E also add  
6 to the breadth of the claim. So the description of  
7 component A ibrutinib also broadens the claim because it  
8 allows for any form of ibrutinib. So any crystalline form,  
9 amorphous form, any other form that ibrutinib is available  
10 as or could be available as is covered or included in the  
11 claim.

12 Q. So without limiting it to any particular form of  
13 ibrutinib, and I believe you testified about this earlier,  
14 but does the form of ibrutinib, will that impact how a  
15 formulation will act or how you would design a formulation  
16 for a particular drug?

17 A. Certainly, especially ibrutinib with polymorphic  
18 forms. Each of those polymorphic forms has its own chemical  
19 property. Solubility is one of the most important ones and  
20 solubility differs among the polymorphic forms as could  
21 stability, as could a number of other characteristics that  
22 we need to manage or manage around in drug, in drug  
23 formulation.

24 Q. Great. Apart from the fact that this claim covers any  
25 oral dosage form and any form of ibrutinib, is there

Donovan - direct

1 anything else about this claim that indicates that it is  
2 broad to you?

3 A. Sure. Even, even in claim 27, where the diluent has  
4 been identified as microcrystalline cellulose, where the  
5 disintegrating agent has been identified as croscarmellose  
6 sodium and the surfactant has been identified as sodium  
7 lauryl sulfate. Even with the identification of those three  
8 compounds, each of them is able to be used in a broad range  
9 of composition in the dosage form, and so, again, it lends  
10 to being able to do multiple different combinations, other  
11 combinations and so forth along with all of the other forms  
12 of ibrutinib and we're just continuing to span the breadth  
13 and the number of potential formulations that claim 27  
14 describes.

15 Q. So is your understanding that Dr. Williams has opined  
16 that because claim 27 identifies specific excipients for the  
17 diluent, disintegrating agent and surfactant, that this  
18 claim is actually narrow?

19 A. I'm aware Dr. Williams has stated that. I don't agree  
20 with that just because we've identified three of the  
21 materials to be included in the formulation, there are still  
22 a vast variety of possible formulations, all of the oral  
23 administration formulations, for example, that it doesn't --  
24 it is still extremely broad.

25 Q. Is there anything else about this claim that makes it

1 broad to you?

2 A. If you go back to claim 1, claim 1 requires one or  
3 more lubricant, and so I both have the opportunity to bring  
4 together a combination of lubricants, which, again, expands  
5 the potential number of formulations that are covered by the  
6 claim and it doesn't claim a range for lubricants.

7 So I could utilize any amount of lubricant  
8 within the context of the rest of the claim. And you can  
9 calculate that there would be a maximum range based on the  
10 definitions of the amounts of the other compounds, but one  
11 or more lubricant at a range of levels, broad possibilities  
12 for formulations that would -- that are defined by this  
13 claim.

14 Q. And as of June 4, 2012, would a POSA have had, I  
15 believe you said dozens of lubricants available to them for  
16 use in a formulation as described in claim 27?

17 A. Yes, they would have. There are dozens of materials  
18 that could be used as lubricant.

19 Q. Now, you said there is no calculation range specified.  
20 You've been able to calculate one, the maximum range. I  
21 would like to turn to the next slide, slide 27. And can you  
22 walk us through how you came up with this number?

23 A. Sure. So claim 1 and claim 27 give ranges for the  
24 materials that are to be contained in formulation, meaning  
25 the components of claim 27, and what I did was take the

Donovan - direct

1 lowest amount of each one of those ingredients, so the  
2 lowest amount of ibrutinib, the lowest amount of  
3 microcrystalline cellulose, croscarmellose, sodium lauryl  
4 sulfate, and I can account for 85 percent of my formulation.

5 So at least amount of formulation, the diluent  
6 is forty percent. The least amount of ibrutinib that can be  
7 contained in the formulation is 40 percent -- two percent  
8 for the surfactant, three percent for the disintegrating  
9 agent.

10 So 85 percent of the formulation has been  
11 accounted for by those, those materials, which leaves up to  
12 15 percent that a formulator can add one or more lubricant  
13 to the formulation up to that amount and be within the  
14 claim.

15 Q. So you've established that claim 27 allows for  
16 15 percent. Does the specification of the '231 patent  
17 disclose anywhere a formulation that could have 15 percent  
18 lubricant in it?

19 A. No, the specification doesn't, doesn't describe  
20 anything close to 15 percent lubricant in a formulation.

21 Q. And for purposes of formulations that match the  
22 elements of claim 27, what is the maximum amount of  
23 lubricant that's used in those example formulations?

24 A. One percent.

25 Q. One percent. Well, let's take a look at that and the



Donovan - direct

1 examples described in the patent. Let's pull up slide 28,  
2 please.

3 Dr. Donovan, can you explain for us what we're  
4 looking at here?

5 A. Sure. And this is a rather complicated slide and  
6 the slide that follows is in the same format, so I will take  
7 a few moments to describe in general what's being shown  
8 here.

9 So we'll look at the columns first, the column  
10 labeled ibrutinib formulation, column labeled crystalline  
11 ibrutinib, crystalline form A of ibrutinib. Underneath  
12 those in the column are general formulation example  
13 descriptions that are in the specification.

14 So there's one set of example descriptions that  
15 utilize ibrutinib as the drug substance. There's another  
16 set that are formatted and almost exactly the same except  
17 require crystalline ibrutinib and then there's finally  
18 another step that, again, formatted almost entirely the same  
19 that requires the use of crystalline A as the ibrutinib  
20 component.

21 So that's what I have in the rows. So if we  
22 look at the lightly shaded background row, you'll see that  
23 the description of the pharmaceutical formulation is the  
24 same in each column within that row except for the ibrutinib  
25 or crystalline ibrutinib or crystalline form A, and all the

1 rest of the examples are set up the same way, that all of  
2 the rows, the descriptors of the general formulation are the  
3 same across the types of ibrutinib, just differ by types of  
4 ibrutinib.

5 Then what I also added was a highlight for the  
6 amount of lubricant that was described in each of the  
7 examples, so in the case of the first row, one percent of a  
8 lubricant. In the second set of examples, one percent of  
9 magnesium stearate, which is a well-known lubricant  
10 material.

11 Q. And to confirm, do any of these examples limit the  
12 type of oral dosage form that is being described?

13 A. No. They all describe a pharmaceutical formulation  
14 for oral administration. So all possible oral formulations  
15 or oral delivery systems.

16 Q. All right. And then if we could turn to slide 29,  
17 please.

18 And similarly, what are we looking at here?

19 A. So the table is set up the exact same way. The column  
20 about crystalline is the drug substance. Crystalline form A  
21 is the drug substance. And then across the row, the same  
22 generalized formulation example. And it has highlighted the  
23 amount of lubricant that is included in that particular  
24 example.

25 So the first example, one percent of magnesium

Donovan - direct

1     stearate. The second example, .5 percent magnesium  
2     stearate. And in the third example instead of percent, the  
3     actual math values of the particular component is described  
4     in that example, but it describes a formulation for oral  
5     administration and its component.

6     Q.     And to confirm, for this slide, for these examples,  
7     again, is there any specific oral dosage form that's recited  
8     in any of the examples?

9     A.     No. In all of the examples that are described in this  
10    table, they are all described as a pharmaceutical  
11    formulations for oral administration comprising these  
12    components, all possible dosage forms.

13    Q.     And as a reminder, you know, you've talked about how  
14    some of these examples pertain to crystalline ibrutinib or  
15    crystalline form A. Claim 27 is not limited to any  
16    particular form, whether crystalline, amorphous or anything  
17    else; right?

18    A.     That's correct, ibrutinib in any form.

19    Q.     Right. I'd like to turn to Table 5 in the patent.  
20    Dr. Donovan, what are we looking at here with respect to  
21    Table 5 and what it's telling us about the formulation?

22    A.     Okay. So Table 5 is describing capsule formulation  
23    and the way Table 5 is set up, it gives the materials that  
24    are included in the formulation in that left column, so  
25    crystalline compound 1, crystalline ibrutinib,

Donovan - direct

1 microcrystalline cellulose, croscarmellose, sodium, sodium  
2 lauryl sulfate, magnesium stearate. The exact same  
3 materials that were in that when the materials were  
4 specified, the same material identical to the previous set  
5 of examples. And in this case, what is being described is  
6 specific capsule formulation containing different amounts of  
7 ibrutinib. And so 40 milligrams ibrutinib, 140, 140, 200,  
8 and then the component of component of the formulation both  
9 described in weight percent and also described in absolute  
10 math of that specific material included in that capsule.

11 Q. Right. So let's turn to slide 30.

12 How many of these formulations actually match up  
13 with claim 27?

14 A. Okay. And there's actually only one of these  
15 formulations from Table 5 that matches the specification in  
16 claim 27 or the sub-claim in claim 27. And I highlighted a  
17 bit on Table 5 to make it a little bit easier to follow what  
18 I'm talking about.

19 And so the light blue background column, that's  
20 the formulation that met the requirements of claim 27 and  
21 the boxes that I've placed over the table are a reminder of  
22 what the, what the claim tells us we can include.

23 So the claim specified between 40 and 50 percent  
24 diluent is possible in the formulation. The shaded 140  
25 capsule meets that. The other examples do not. And then

Donovan - direct

1 the -- claim 27 and claim 1 allow for any amount and if you  
2 do the calculation, up to 15 percent of the lubricant, in  
3 this case, magnesium stearate, and the blue shaded example  
4 is the only example that contains a lubricant and it  
5 contains it at a level of 0.5 percent.

6 Q. And if we could turn to Table 6, please, in the '231  
7 patent.

8 THE COURT: Can you do me a favor? Can you hold  
9 for one second?

10 MR. ABHYANKAR: Yes. Yes, Your Honor.

11 THE COURT: Okay. Thank you. Sorry about that.

12 MR. ABHYANKAR: No problem.

13 BY MR. ABHYANKAR:

14 Q. Dr. Donovan, let's turn to Table 6 in the '231. We'll  
15 blow that up for her.

16 What are we looking at here?

17 A. So this is an example provided in the specification  
18 that describes a general formulation, describes a general  
19 formulation, components for a tablet.

20 Q. Okay. And so Table 5 was about capsules and Table 6  
21 is about tablets.

22 Table 6, the formulation described here, does it  
23 match up with claim 27?

24 A. No, it doesn't.

25 Q. And --

1 A. It --

2 Q. Sorry. Why not?

3 A. Claim 27 requires the inclusion of sodium lauryl  
4 sulfate. There is no sodium lauryl sulfate contained in  
5 this example formulation.

6 Q. And, in fact, there's no surfactant listed at all.  
7 Correct?

8 A. Right.

9 Q. And although this particular formulation doesn't match  
10 up, what is the high end range of a lubricant that's  
11 included in the formulation?

12 A. So they specified up to 2.5 percent magnesium  
13 stearate, which is again lubricant material.

14 Q. All right. Now, other than the examples that we've  
15 just talked about, are there any other formulation recipes  
16 that are identified in the specification? So other than  
17 Table 5 and Table 6, any specific formulation recipes  
18 identified in the specification of the '231?

19 A. No, there aren't.

20 Q. The description in the example that we have looked at,  
21 are they broader or narrower than claim 27?

22 A. They're all narrower than claim 27.

23 Q. And why is that?

24 A. Well, they're either specifying that it's a capsule or  
25 a tablet or they limit or don't even include a lubricant.

Donovan - direct

1 Much lower components of the lubricant compared to the  
2 15 percent. That's what the claim specified.

3 Q. And does claim 27 permit up to 15 times the amount of  
4 lubricant than the highest amount that's described for the  
5 formulations that match claim 27 in the '231?

6 A. Essentially. So the one formulation, the specific  
7 formulation declaring the components and their amounts  
8 describes one percent magnesium stearate lubricant. So you  
9 can have up to 15 percent, essentially 15 times.

10 Q. So based on this -- well, let me ask you this  
11 question: Does the specification of the '231 patent  
12 describe any oral pharmaceutical formulation of ibrutinib  
13 that includes a lubricant that is up to 15 percent --

14 THE COURT: Actually, can I stop you for a  
15 second? Hold on. I'm confused.

16 MR. ABHYANKAR: Sure.

17 THE COURT: I thought that the amount that you  
18 identified on slide 30 had .5 percent lubricant. How do you  
19 get one percent?

20 MR. ABHYANKAR: Oh, sorry. Your Honor, as we  
21 established earlier, if you can go back one more slide.

22 THE COURT: Those are one percent. Right? I  
23 get that.

24 MR. ABHYANKAR: Yes. So --

25 THE COURT: But it's as low as .5 percent in

1 Table 5. Right?

2 THE WITNESS: Can I -- would you like -- can I  
3 explain, Judge?

4 THE COURT: Yes. Could you, please?

5 THE WITNESS: Sure. If you at the slide deck as  
6 it appears right now, the top row also discloses components  
7 that would -- it also discloses components, but what it's  
8 disclosing is one percent magnesium stearate.

9 THE COURT: And I get that, but I thought he  
10 asked you the most that's disclosed in the patent and I  
11 thought you said one percent. Am I missing something? I  
12 probably am. I'm probably missing something, so what am I  
13 missing?

14 THE WITNESS: The specific table in Table 5 is  
15 really a specific example, a dosage form plus the component,  
16 and they meet the requirements of claim 27, and you are  
17 correct, it's at .5 percent.

18 More general, yet still could meet the  
19 requirements of claim 27, up to one percent is described in  
20 the specification in the example.

21 THE COURT: Okay. All right.

22 THE WITNESS: You are correct, the exact  
23 specific example that's provided is .5 percent.

24 THE COURT: Okay. Sorry. Go ahead.

25 MR. ABHYANKAR: Sorry, Judge Connolly.



1 THE COURT: No. Go ahead.

2 BY MR. ABHYANKAR:

3 Q. To follow up and to make the record clear, what is the  
4 difference between this formulation that we're seeing here  
5 at the top and the formulation, the specific example that's  
6 in Table 5?

7 A. So in the, the -- the example that has been pulled out  
8 on the opposite slide, it allows for any oral formulation or  
9 any pharmaceutical formulation for oral administration.  
10 Table 5 is limited to capsules only.

11 THE COURT: All right.

12 BY MR. ABHYANKAR:

13 Q. All right. And just to confirm, the specification  
14 does not describe any oral pharmaceutical formulation with a  
15 lubricant content up to 15 percent; right?

16 A. Correct. There's no description of a formulation with  
17 a lubricant up to 15, at the level of 15 percent.

18 Q. And is there any evidence in the specification in your  
19 opinion that shows that the inventors actually invented a  
20 formulation of ibrutinib that had lubricant up to  
21 15 percent?

22 A. No, there's no description in the specification that  
23 would lead a POSA to understand that they had invented a  
24 formulation with that high a level of lubricant, the  
25 15 percent.

1 Q. All right. I'd like to -- and so what is your  
2 conclusion, what is your ultimate opinion regarding lack of  
3 written description with respect to claim 27 of the '231  
4 patent in view of all of this?

5 A. Well, I view that claim 27 is invalid based on the  
6 lack of written description provided in the specification.

7 Q. So let's turn to slide 34 and your enablement opinion.

8 So let's start again and I will reiterate, I  
9 know you're not a lawyer, but just in your own words, can  
10 you explain, we'll turn to slide 35, can you explain what  
11 you understand the enablement standard to look at or  
12 analyze?

13 A. Sure. So the enablement standard requires that the  
14 specification has to communicate to a POSA how to make and  
15 use the full scope of the claim, and then without undue  
16 experimentation, that there has to be information provided  
17 that assists the POSA to, with their knowledge, make the  
18 invention.

19 Q. And did you analyze the number of factors called the  
20 Wands factors to determine whether undue experimentation  
21 would be required to practice the full scope of claim 27?

22 A. I did, yes.

23 Q. All right. Let's look at these factors. Go to the  
24 next slide, please.

25 So let's -- are these the factors that you

1 analyzed, Dr. Donovan?

2 A. They are the factors I've come to know as the Wands  
3 factors.

4 Q. All right. And we've spent a fair amount of time on  
5 the breadth of the claims, so maybe let's start there.

6 We'll highlight that. And just a reminder, how  
7 does the breadth of this claim suggest to a POSA whether  
8 undue experimentation is required to practice the scope?

9 A. As I discussed, claim 27 is extremely broad, contains  
10 a world of possible oral formulations, and as a result to  
11 actually bring about all of those oral formulations under  
12 all the variables that they could address.

13 You know, any oral dosage form, any form of the  
14 ibrutinib, the ranges of multiple of the components, it  
15 would just take a huge amount of experimentation to address  
16 the breadth of the claim.

17 Q. And let's turn now to the nature of the invention. Go  
18 back to slide 38 -- sorry. 36, 36.

19 So could we highlight number four, please?  
20 Let's talk about the nature of the invention.

21 How would you characterize the nature of the  
22 invention that's recited in claim 27?

23 A. Well, it's pharmaceutical formulations for oral  
24 administration, extremely broad to begin with. Lots of  
25 possibilities, containing ibrutinib material that contains

Donovan - direct

1 or is known to be in multiple polymorphic forms. So it's a  
2 complex invention, broad and multifaceted.

3 Q. If we could turn to slide 40. We've already discussed  
4 this at length. Are these two of the reasons why you  
5 believe the nature of the invention is complex?

6 A. Right. It covers, again, all of the dosage, all of  
7 the possible oral dosage forms, any form containing  
8 ibrutinib, and specifically leading to or could contain up  
9 to 15 percent of a lubricant. It adds to the complexity of  
10 the formulation.

11 Q. And why does adding up to 15 percent of the lubricant  
12 add to the complexity?

13 A. Because, again, many of the lubricants that are used  
14 in pharmaceutical composition have some negative aspects to  
15 them also, limit some of the performance characteristic of  
16 the final dosage form, so magnesium stearate in specific has  
17 some limitations that would make including 15 percent of  
18 that difficult and still have the dosage form to be able to  
19 be utilized and deliver the drug that is contained within  
20 it.

21 Q. These issues that you are talking about with respect  
22 to the lubricant, are they reported in the scientific  
23 literature?

24 A. Yes, they are.

25 Q. If we could turn to DTX-2261, please. What are we

1 looking at here, Dr. Donovan?

2 A. So we are looking at the cover of a reference text  
3 called the Handbook of Pharmaceutical Excipients, and this  
4 is a commonly used reference text used by formulators, used  
5 by educators. I use this with my students. It contains  
6 monographs, short descriptions, several pages of description  
7 about commonly used excipients and gives us the highlights  
8 of their physical properties, how they get used, things that  
9 are -- information that will be useful to the formulator  
10 when selecting an excipient to use.

11 Q. If we could turn to page 404 of this text. Can you  
12 describe what we're seeing here?

13 A. Sure. We're seeing the first page of about a four  
14 page monograph describing magnesium stearate, the lubricant  
15 that has been used in the example in the patent.

16 Q. And if we could turn to page 405, I would like to call  
17 out the comments on the bottom right.

18 Can you -- what does it say about magnesium  
19 stearate as used as a lubricant in a formulation?

20 A. So this is communicating what POSAs are familiar with  
21 about magnesium stearate. It's a hydrophobic material. It  
22 has some water-disliking characteristics. As a result, you  
23 put it in a dosage form, solid dosage a form in the  
24 description here, that you should use the lowest possible  
25 concentration to do that because it will give what people

Donovan - direct

1 tend to often refer to as a waterproofing characteristic to  
2 the dosage form. It makes the dosage form hydrophobic. It  
3 doesn't interact with water as well. The drug doesn't  
4 dissolve as well, and it goes on to describe capsule  
5 dissolution in particular being sensitive to the amount of  
6 magnesium stearate. Again, use the lowest amount possible.

7 And then the mixing time. Mixing the powders to  
8 make sure they're all evenly mixed and everything is evenly  
9 distributed before we actually make the capsule requires  
10 some time. The longer we do that, the more the magnesium  
11 stearate is able or presents itself in that hydrophobic  
12 manner and then decreases the dissolution of the drug  
13 substance in the final capsule.

14 Q. So based on all of this, the fact that the claim  
15 covers any oral dosage form and covers up to 15 percent  
16 lubricant, once again, how would you describe the nature of  
17 the invention here?

18 A. Complex. To be able to manage to meet the, the claim  
19 requirement and be able to formulate a 15 percent lubricant,  
20 for example, and all of the possible ibrutinib forms, the  
21 polymorphic forms described in the patent, it's just -- it's  
22 difficult and complex.

23 Q. What is the practical effect of a lubricant being in  
24 such a high amount in a formulation?

25 A. Well, it usually causes the formulation to fail. And

Donovan - direct

1 those are, you know, formulator criteria that if it won't  
2 allow my drug to release or be dissolved at a rate that will  
3 give me the blood concentrations needed, my dosage form has  
4 failed. In many cases, that high a level of lubricant,  
5 depending on with an oral dosage form I would be making, I  
6 might not even be able to make it correctly. It might -- it  
7 might segregate. It might not compact well. It might cause  
8 coating material to not adhere.

9 There are a variety of problems that could be  
10 encountered with that high a level of lubricant in the, in  
11 the formulation.

12 Q. Okay. Thank you.

13 Let's turn to slide 36 again, and we'll move to  
14 the next, and I'm going to group these together because they  
15 are pretty related. Numbers 2 and 3, the amount of  
16 direction or guidance presented and the presence or absence  
17 of working examples. We talked a little bit about this  
18 earlier.

19 But can you identify for us, what guidance in  
20 the specification is there to a POSA to practice the full  
21 scope of claim 27 without undue experimentation?

22 A. Well, again, extremely limited guidance provided by  
23 the specification. The claim allows for, again, any  
24 possible oral formulation and there isn't any direction  
25 provided about almost all of the possible oral formulations

1 or oral -- formulations for oral administration.

2 And as we just discussed, there's one working  
3 example provided, the capsule with the exact content. One  
4 single working example provided. It provides an example  
5 that doesn't come anywhere close in lubricant level to the  
6 lubricant level described by the claim.

7 Q. And that working example is only one of the many oral  
8 dosage forms that are otherwise covered by claim 27?

9 A. Right. It describes capsules, but, again, there's at  
10 least 20 identified by the, in the specification and there's  
11 more, quite a few more if you really would have a formulator  
12 to find all of the possible oral formulations.

13 Q. And if we could pull up slide 43 and 44, Mr. Ferrare.

14 Just to confirm, these other disclosures that we  
15 looked at, did they help provide guidance to a POSA as to  
16 how to make and use the full scope of the formulations that  
17 fall within claim 27? Please start with 43. Sorry.

18 A. No. Again, they allow for a pharmaceutical  
19 formulation for oral administration and they, again, repeat  
20 the components, the ranges of the claim, and when they do  
21 get specific about the material and the amount, they end up  
22 being the exact same material as given in the capsule  
23 example in Table 5. And so they don't do anything more  
24 besides open up the possibility of every pharmaceutical  
25 formulation for oral administration as compared to Table 5,



1     which are capsules.

2     Q.     And given what we've learned about the properties of  
3     lubricants and formulations and their use, what kind of  
4     guidance would you need as a POSA to develop a formulation  
5     that has 15 percent lubricant?

6     A.     I would need a lot of guidance actually.  
7     Fifteen percent of a lubricant, 15 percent of any lubricant,  
8     15 percent of any combination of lubricant, that information  
9     is not available in the art of how to formulate and develop  
10    a dosage form with lubricants at that level.

11           And so that's the information I would need in  
12    the specification, how would I make a compact product that  
13    would stick together or would dissolve correctly or how can  
14    I make sure that all of my coating material will stick to  
15    the surface or, you know, again, a whole variety of other  
16    problems that we know can be associated with lubricant  
17    inclusion in a formulation, I need to know as a POSA at  
18    15 percent how do make that, how to -- yes, how to make  
19    that.

20    Q.     Are you aware that plaintiffs' expert, Dr. Williams,  
21    suggests that there are physicochemical properties disclosed  
22    in the '231 that would help to fill in the gap for the lack  
23    of guidance in the specification?

24    A.     I'm aware that he is -- has --

25           MS. ANDERSEN:   Your Honor.

Donovan - direct

1 THE COURT: Hold up. Okay. Hold on. Hold on.

2 THE WITNESS: Judge, are you waiting for me to  
3 answer?

4 THE COURT: No, I'm not. I'm trying to do  
5 something myself.

6 Okay. Go ahead, Ms. Andersen.

7 MS. ANDERSEN: Dr. Williams will be testifying  
8 later in this trial. Mr. Abhyankar, I believe this is the  
9 second time is characterizing his testimony in a certain  
10 way. I don't think it's appropriate to do that before the  
11 testimony comes in.

12 THE COURT: So this has been actually the  
13 practice to date for the first two days of trial. Everybody  
14 was doing that without objection.

15 Are we planning on having rebuttal in this  
16 trial?

17 MS. ANDERSEN: Well, Your Honor, you had offered  
18 defendants a fourth round and you had mentioned true  
19 rebuttal on objective indicia only, I believe, so it would  
20 not be directed to these issues.

21 MR. ABHYANKAR: And that --

22 THE COURT: No, wait. I limited rebuttal -- so  
23 I said there was no rebuttal in this case except for  
24 secondary considerations of obviousness?

25 MS. ANDERSEN: Yes, Your Honor. In the fourth

1 round.

2 THE COURT: In the fourth what?

3 MS. ANDERSEN: The fourth round of testimony.

4 THE COURT: That's where you're confusing me.  
5 Fourth round sounds like it's -- I mean, rebuttal is third  
6 round. That's why I'm confused.

7 MS. ANDERSEN: Sorry Your Honor. Let me be  
8 clear. So I'm talking about first round is plaintiffs'  
9 infringement. Second round is defendants' response on  
10 infringement and invalidity case. Third round is  
11 plaintiffs' response on validity. Fourth round Your Honor  
12 had limited to rebuttal on objective indicia.

13 THE COURT: Yes. I'm not sure why I did that.  
14 Did I allow for, in the pretrial conference, did I say there  
15 would be rebuttal on infringement?

16 MS. ANDERSEN: No, you did not, Your Honor.

17 THE COURT: Is there some reason in patent cases  
18 that there's not a rebuttal case the way there would be in a  
19 normal case?

20 MS. ANDERSEN: Your Honor, it is very common in  
21 my experience in bench trials in pharma cases in Delaware  
22 for the judges to request that the defendant sort of  
23 pre-rebut.

24 THE COURT: That's a different question. Sorry.  
25 That's just a different question.

Donovan - direct

1 I'm just trying to figure out if I'm missing  
2 something. I mean, I'm going to let this testimony in just  
3 because it's more efficient, but I also want to make sure.  
4 You know, I'm trying to figure out why I said what I did.  
5 Sometimes I say things that are really not very bright.

6 I think what I was thinking about was secondary  
7 considerations was just I am certainly of the view that, and  
8 I've written about this in the one obviousness opinion I  
9 spent time on, I mean, I think it's confusing.

10 I think the Federal Circuit case law, you can  
11 read a lot of cases to suggest that you don't get to bring  
12 in evidence of secondary considerations until there has  
13 been a prima facie case and you get to rebut it. And I  
14 have come up with a view that, no, I think you have to  
15 permit secondary considerations. It all comes in at once  
16 is where I've come out on this. I think that's the better  
17 view. I think that's why I may have said what I did, Ms.  
18 Andersen.

19 MS. ANDERSEN: Yes, Your Honor, and we're okay  
20 with -- because of the way the rounds are set up, we'll drop  
21 our objection.

22 THE COURT: Okay. I mean, as far as I'm  
23 concerned, I didn't know that I ruled out a rebuttal, but I  
24 would rather avoid rebuttal. We've got to watch the time.  
25 So let's just move forward.

1 MS. ANDERSEN: Thank you, Your Honor.

2 BY MR. ABHYANKAR:

3 Q. Dr. Donovan, I will restate my question, which is:  
4 Are you aware whether Dr. Williams has argued that the '231  
5 describes physicochemical properties of ibrutinib that help  
6 fill in the gap, the gaps and guidance to a POSA from the  
7 specification?

8 A. Yes, I'm aware that Dr. Williams made those types of  
9 statements.

10 MR. ABHYANKAR: If we could pull up JTX-11, the  
11 '231 patent at column 71.

12 BY MR. ABHYANKAR:

13 Q. Is it your understanding that this is the only  
14 physicochemical property that Dr. Williams identified with a  
15 patent related to ibrutinib?

16 A. I believe this is the area that he cites. Yes, it's  
17 the solubility of form A and form B, the two polymorphic  
18 forms, form A.

19 THE WITNESS: Form B and the solubility of form  
20 A at two pH's, the lower pH, 1, 2, 3 areas for information  
21 about solubility in the stomach potentially and then the  
22 higher pH's around six or so for information in the  
23 gastrointestinal tract. That's how a formulator would use  
24 that information and then provides one solubility value for  
25 form B at a high pH relative to the pH's in the

1       gastrointestinal tract. So 7.4.

2       BY MR. ABHYANKAR:

3       Q.       Is this information here sufficient to tell or to  
4       guide a formulator to practice the full scope of claim 27?

5       A.       No, it's not. It isn't telling me anything about the  
6       solubility about any of the other forms, the amorphous form  
7       to start with, so, no, not enough.

8       Q.       And has Dr. Williams identified any specific  
9       physicochemical properties other than the aqueous solubility  
10      of forms A and B recited anywhere in the '231 patent?

11      A.       I believe he has made statements that there are other  
12      pieces of information, but they're not in a format useful to  
13      a formulator.

14      Q.       Let's turn to slide 34, please. No. Go to slide 32,  
15      please.

16                       Are these the purported physicochemical  
17      properties of ibrutinib that Dr. Williams pointed to?

18      A.       Some of them, so he points to or states low bulk  
19      density, for example, and there are two densities reported,  
20      one for, you know, one for each form and not form A and B  
21      and I right now can't remember the forms that are  
22      associated. I think it's E and F, and it's a calculated,  
23      simulated density calculation that was, that was done based  
24      on structure. And there's no information about partition  
25      coefficient in the specification.

Donovan - direct

1                   And then the aqueous solubility with only for  
2 form A and one value for form B.

3       Q.       And even if a formulator had all of this information  
4 and it was disclosed in the '231, would that change your  
5 opinion as to whether a POSA, as to whether the '231 patent  
6 guides a POSA to fill in the gaps from what is otherwise not  
7 disclosed in the specification?

8       A.       No. The -- what little information is presented in  
9 the specification doesn't provide anywhere, doesn't provide  
10 sufficient information to give a formulator the information  
11 they actually need to develop or -- to formulate all  
12 possible formulations for oral use.

13      Q.       And, Dr. Donovan, is there any specific information in  
14 the '231 patent that you are aware of that references  
15 specifically that ibrutinib suffers from poor  
16 bioavailability?

17      A.       I don't recall seeing anything in the specification  
18 that describes anything about ibrutinib's bioavailability.

19      Q.       So let's go to the state of the art, back to slide 36,  
20 Mr. Ferrare.

21                   In your opinion, Dr. Donovan, if you could  
22 highlight number 5, please, does the state of the art help  
23 fill in the gaps with the lack of guidance in the  
24 specification?

25      A.       No, it doesn't. There isn't any further art about

Donovan - direct

1     ibrutinib in particular than what is in the specification  
2     and the rest of the art is not adequate, especially, you  
3     know, and you can go back to the art about all of the  
4     pharmaceutical formulation, the art about the lubricant and  
5     so forth. The state of the art doesn't, doesn't supply the  
6     information necessary.

7     Q.     And is that because the claim covers any oral dosage  
8     form?

9     A.     That's certainly one of the reasons, that all possible  
10    oral dosage forms and the specification doesn't provide the  
11    information that a formulator would need to not need to --  
12    to conduct an accepted number of experiments that would  
13    actually be able to accomplish the scope of the claim.

14    Q.     And if we could go to DTX-2430, please. And, Dr.  
15    Donovan, what is this document?

16    A.     This is a discovery document that the plaintiffs wrote  
17    and presented.

18    Q.     And if we could turn to the top of page 42. Plaintiff  
19    states here that ibrutinib was a particularly challenging  
20    compound to formulate for numerous reasons. For example,  
21    ibrutinib is nearly insoluble in water.

22            Do you see that?

23    A.     I see that, yes.

24    Q.     And what does plaintiffs' own statement suggest with  
25    start of the regard regarding ibrutinib?



Donovan - direct

1 A. The statement is telling us that the state of the art  
2 was that there would be -- the plaintiffs recognize there  
3 would be challenges to formulating ibrutinib.

4 Q. Well, let's turn back to slide 36, Mr. Ferrare. If we  
5 could next turn to the skill in the art.

6 Do you believe that the skill in this particular  
7 formulation art is high?

8 A. Yes, I do. Even my definition of POSA describes an  
9 educational level and experience level that would be  
10 considered high.

11 Q. Does that high level of skill in your opinion overcome  
12 the challenge and the obstacles that we've seen with respect  
13 to the various factors you've analyzed?

14 A. Not, not in light of the breadth of the claim, no.

15 Q. And if we could turn to the predictability or  
16 unpredictability of the art, number seven, I think we've  
17 touched on this a bit, but briefly, how would you  
18 characterize the predictability of the art as relates to  
19 claim 27?

20 A. I would characterize it as unpredictable, relatively  
21 unpredictable in almost all of the cases. For all possible  
22 oral formulations, and when we're dealing with  
23 multicomponent mixtures, so the required specific material  
24 and the variability among the polymorphs is specific in the  
25 dosage forms. It becomes very difficult to predict the

1 behavior and the result of formulations in almost all  
2 cases.

3 Q. And so, finally, if we could turn to the first factor,  
4 quantity of experimentation necessary.

5 Given your analysis of the factors and the scope  
6 of claim 27, how much experimentation would be necessary to  
7 practice the full scope of claim 27?

8 A. To practice the full scope of the claim, a tremendous  
9 amount of experimentation would be necessary because -- I  
10 will go back to my introductory slide with all the arrows on  
11 it.

12 There would be a tremendous amount of iterative  
13 processes for each possible dosage form that was going to be  
14 formulated at each level of -- with each polymorph of  
15 ibrutinib and containing those vast ranges of material that  
16 are specified for the formulation. So just a huge amount of  
17 experimentation would be required to practice the full  
18 scope.

19 Q. And I think we touched on this in your background  
20 discussion, but do even small changes to a formulation  
21 impact the functioning of that formulation?

22 A. Sure, they can, especially, especially small changes  
23 in lubricant. It's well-known in the art that small changes  
24 in lubricant can cause significant changes in the  
25 performance of the formulation.

Donovan - direct

1 Q. And does the fact that small changes can affect the  
2 performance of a formulation also affect the amount of  
3 experimentation that's required?

4 A. Yes, sure, because you both need to do a lot of  
5 experiments to arrive at the value or values of components  
6 in the formulation that you would want, and then you have to  
7 understand if you have small variabilities in those, to what  
8 extent that's going to impact your final formulation and  
9 will it impact the actual therapeutic use or outcome in the  
10 intended patient population.

11 Q. So to conclude, Dr. Donovan, what is your opinion on  
12 whether or not it would require undue experimentation to  
13 practice the full scope of claim 27?

14 A. It's my opinion it would require undue experimentation  
15 to practice the full scope.

16 Q. And as a result goes is it your opinion that claim 27  
17 is invalid for lack of enablement?

18 A. Yes. My opinion is that claim 27 is invalid for lack  
19 of enablement.

20 MR. ABHYANKAR: Thank you, Your Honor. I tender  
21 the witness for cross.

22 THE COURT: All right. Thank you.

23 Can we hold up, Ms. Andersen?

24 MS. ANDERSEN: Yes, Your Honor.

25 THE COURT: Okay. Thank you. Go ahead.

Donovan - cross

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25

## CROSS-EXAMINATION

BY MR. ANDERSEN:

Q. Good afternoon, Dr. Donovan. I'm Erica Andersen. I will be asking you some questions today.

A. Good afternoon.

Q. Did you receive a box, maybe a couple boxes of documents that --

A. Yes.

Q. -- we sent you?

A. I received two boxes.

Q. Okay. Do you have those with you?

A. I do.

Q. Okay. Great. And they're open and --

A. No, they are not. I was instructed not to open them, so I did not.

Q. You can open them now if you wouldn't mind.

A. I will step away for just a moment, open both of them and I will be right back with you.

Q. Great. Thanks.

(Pause.)

THE WITNESS: All right. Thank you. I have them opened now.

BY MR. ANDERSEN:

Q. Great. And, Dr. Donovan, I'd like to turn first to PTX-965, Sandoz's overall quality summary.

1 MR. ABHYANKAR: Ms. Andersen -- Your Honor, I'm  
2 not sure this document was even cited in Dr. Donovan's  
3 report.

4 THE COURT: And it's cross-examination.

5 MR. ABHYANKAR: This is a -- this is our -- this  
6 is our ANDA, Your Honor, that she didn't analyze. I don't  
7 think she has ever seen this document.

8 THE COURT: Well, so let's wait to see what the  
9 question is. I mean, I assume Ms. Andersen is saying, get  
10 ready, look at the document. I'm going to start asking.  
11 Let's hear what the question is.

12 BY MR. ANDERSEN:

13 Q. And I would like to go to page 80, to the section  
14 called '10. What is the rationale for excipient selection?  
15 Let me know when you are there.

16 A. So is it page 80 -- never mind.

17 THE COURT: Hold up. Ms. Andersen, I mean, I  
18 don't think it's appropriate cross-examination just to have  
19 a witness read a document. What's the question?

20 MS. ANDERSEN: The question is: Looking at this  
21 section, Sandoz looks at our reference product, they reverse  
22 engineered it and they looked at the literature data in  
23 order to formulate their product. Correct?

24 MR. ABHYANKAR: Again, Your Honor, I renew our  
25 objection. She hasn't established the witness has ever seen

1 this document.

2 THE COURT: Okay. So, look, I think it's an  
3 appropriate question if she wants to say, isn't it true that  
4 Sandoz was able to formulate or, you know, whatever, Sandoz  
5 formulated a drug. That's okay if she knows, if the witness  
6 knows.

7 I am at a loss, though. I mean, I don't  
8 understand. I mean, the document is what it document is.  
9 If this witness isn't authenticating it, I don't understand  
10 why we're having essentially a witness just confirm what's  
11 in a document.

12 MS. ANDERSEN: Yes, Your Honor. The point is,  
13 and I will get to that, the specification of the '231 patent  
14 is the very source of data that a POSA, that a company like  
15 Sandoz could use to formulate.

16 THE COURT: Okay. Why don't you get to that?  
17 Why don't you just go there without having her read a  
18 document?

19 MS. ANDERSEN: Okay.

20 BY MR. ANDERSEN:

21 Q. The specification, Dr. Donovan, of the '231 patent is  
22 a source of data a company like Sandoz could look to for  
23 information about the reference product; is that correct?

24 A. I -- they could look to the, the '231 for information  
25 about the crystal forms of ibrutinib, but there is no

1 specific information about what I define as the reference  
2 product that I'm aware of that's contained in the '231.

3 Q. Dr. Donovan, I would like to take a look at your slide  
4 DDX-7-9. And there you list pre-formulation testing a POSA  
5 would want to perform in order to characterize the active  
6 ingredient; is that correct?

7 A. That's correct, yes.

8 Q. And i would like to discuss some of the information  
9 provided about ibrutinib in the '231 patent specification.  
10 Two of the items you have up here is polymorphism and  
11 crystallinity?

12 A. That's correct.

13 Q. Let's take a look at JTX, column 30, starting at --

14 THE COURT: JTX what?

15 MS. ANDERSEN: JTX-11, column 30.

16 THE COURT: Thank you.

17 BY MR. ANDERSEN:

18 Q. And starting at line 44 --

19 A. And can I ask, do I have a hard copy of the '231  
20 included in any of these materials?

21 Q. Yes. There should be a copy included in the binder of  
22 materials, yes.

23 A. Can you guide me? I have three binders. Can you  
24 guide me what the DTX-number is?

25 Q. JTX-0011.

1 MR. ABHYANKAR: Dr. Donovan, maybe tab one.

2 THE WITNESS: I found it in the  
3 cross-examination material. Thank you. Can you tell me  
4 what column you highlighted?

5 BY MR. ANDERSEN:

6 Q. Column 30, starting at line 44.

7 A. Okay.

8 Q. And that states, in some embodiments, compound 1 is  
9 amorphous and anhydrous; correct?

10 A. That's what this says, yes.

11 Q. And compound 1 is ibrutinib; is that correct?

12 A. That's my understanding, yes.

13 Q. And from column 30 to 36, those columns discuss  
14 particular properties of crystalline form A, B, C, D, E and  
15 F of ibrutinib; is that correct?

16 A. Well, they describe the -- refresh my memory about  
17 these columns. And they're primarily focused on the X-ray  
18 diffractograms and IR spectra, and they do have information  
19 about from DSC and some about TGA on some of the compounds.

20 Q. Okay. And let's turn to Example 2 in column 66  
21 starting around line 50. That example is entitled X-ray  
22 powder diffraction XRPD; is that correct?

23 A. Which lines in column 66?

24 Q. Starting around line 50.

25 A. Okay.



1 Q. Example 2, X-ray powder diffraction.

2 A. Okay.

3 Q. And so the example is entitled X-ray powder  
4 diffraction; right, Dr. Donovan?

5 A. It's titled X-ray powder diffraction, yes.

6 Q. And looking at column 66, starting there, you agree  
7 that Example 2 provides a protocol for how to determine XRPD  
8 patterns performed with ibrutinib; correct?

9 A. Yes, you know, from line 54 to the end of that column,  
10 certain it's describing how one would set up the X-ray  
11 powder diffractogram.

12 Q. And then continuing on, continuing on in that example  
13 in column 67, starting at line 37, there are six XRPD peaks  
14 for form A.

15 A. Described, you mean?

16 Q. Yes.

17 A. Yes, that's what's given.

18 Q. And then right under that, line 41 through 42, it  
19 states that the crystallinity of form A was unaffected  
20 after one week under two different sets of storage  
21 conditions.

22 Do you see that?

23 A. I see that.

24 Q. And then right under that, there are five XRPD peaks  
25 for form B; correct?

1 A. Yes.

2 Q. And under that, it says, the crystallinity of form B  
3 was unaffected after one week under two different sets of  
4 storage conditions; is that correct?

5 A. That's what it says.

6 Q. Column 67 at lines 50 through 55 provides nine XRPD  
7 peaks for form C; is that correct?

8 A. Maybe I can't count. No. I seem to be only counting  
9 eight.

10 Q. I got nine, but eight or nine peaks for form C?

11 A. I got -- right. I'm sorry.

12 Q. And column 67, lines 56 through 57 states: The  
13 crystallinity was unaffected after one week under two  
14 different sets of storage conditions?

15 A. That's what it says.

16 Q. If you look at the figures in the patent, XRPD  
17 patterns are provided there for forms A through F; is that  
18 correct?

19 A. My recollection, let me -- yes.

20 Q. And on your slide -- DDX-7-9, you also identify  
21 melting point; is that correct?

22 A. Yes.

23 Q. Let's go to Example 5, column 69 where that example  
24 begins. And this example discusses DSC data; is that  
25 correct?

1 A. I'm sorry. The sound cut out. What did you say?

2 Q. The example discusses DSC data; correct?

3 A. Yes, it does.

4 Q. And Example 5 reports a peak at about 157 degrees for  
5 Form A?

6 A. Yes.

7 Q. And looking at the top of column 70, Example 5  
8 identifies a peak in the DSC at about 115 to 118 degrees for  
9 form B?

10 A. Yes.

11 Q. And starting at around line 8 of column 70, a peak in  
12 the DSC at about 137 to 139 degrees for form C?

13 A. Yes.

14 Q. And Figure 3 in the patent is the DSC for form A?

15 A. Yes.

16 Q. Figure 7 is the DSC for form B?

17 A. Yes.

18 Q. And Figure 10 is the DSC for form C?

19 A. Yes.

20 Q. And Figure 15 has the DSC for form E?

21 A. Yes.

22 Q. Turning back to your slide DDX7-9, you also identify  
23 hygroscopicity?

24 A. Yes, I did.

25 Q. Now, let's turn to Example 6 in the patent, columns 70

1 through 71. And that example sets forth parameters for  
2 determining hygroscopicity; is that correct?

3 A. Yes, it does.

4 Q. And at the bottom of column 70, the patent further  
5 reports that form A is not hygroscopic.

6 A. Under the conditions that were used to measure, yes.

7 Q. That means form A under those conditions doesn't  
8 absorb water; right?

9 A. As measured, it was not shown -- as measured, it was  
10 not deemed to be hygroscopic.

11 Q. Your slide DTX7-9 also discusses aqueous solubility?

12 A. Yes.

13 Q. On direct you said that's a very important property to  
14 know; is that correct?

15 A. Correct.

16 Q. Turning to example seven in the patent in column 71,  
17 that is entitled thermodynamic aqueous solubility?

18 A. Yes.

19 Q. It provides an HPLC method for analyzing ibrutinib;  
20 correct?

21 A. Well, I think it provides the HPLC method used for the  
22 solubility measurements described in that section, which  
23 were for form A and likely used for form B, but I'm not sure  
24 that's entirely clear.

25 Q. And so that HPLC method in example 7 was used to

1 assess the solubility of ibrutinib for different pHs?

2 A. That, that would be what the reader would bring from  
3 that information in the column, that HPLC method measures  
4 the solubility under the conditions described for --

5 Q. And at the bottom of column 71, it also says that the  
6 solubility, it also provides the solubility of form B at a  
7 pH of 7.42?

8 A. It states something about the solubility of form B, a  
9 pH, yes.

10 Q. Let's turn to example eight at the top of column --  
11 top of column 72. And that example provides a method for  
12 determining chemical purity; correct?

13 A. That's what that example states, yes.

14 Q. And chemical purity can be information on stability;  
15 is that right?

16 A. I think only indirectly. If you're using the chemical  
17 purity assay as your material assay when you are conducting  
18 a stability study, I guess it could, but purity and  
19 stability are not necessarily -- chemical purity  
20 determinations are not always utilized in stability  
21 analyses.

22 Q. But you could use it to determine, for example,  
23 whether there were degradation products of ibrutinib?

24 A. I don't know actually. I don't know enough about this  
25 chemical purity determination to determine whether it was

1     able to identify degradant products of ibrutinib or not.

2     Q.     Your slide DDX-7-9 also lists density; is that  
3     correct?

4     A.     Yes.

5     Q.     And in 2012, a POSA would have been able to perform  
6     testing to assess the bulk density of a compound; is that  
7     right?

8     A.     Yes, they could have.

9     Q.     And DDX-7-9 also lists particle size, particle  
10    morphology and surface area; is that right?

11    A.     That's right.

12    Q.     And in 2012, a person of skill would have been able to  
13    perform testing to assess those characteristics as well; is  
14    that right?

15    A.     Potentially. Sometimes it's compound dependent, but,  
16    yes, potentially. There were technologies and  
17    instrumentation available to the POSA to conduct those  
18    experiments.

19    Q.     And let's go to your slide DDX-7-13. That's one of  
20    your slides entitled formulation design pathway for oral  
21    formulation. And here you've highlighted the text; is that  
22    correct?

23    A.     That's correct.

24    Q.     Design and test prototype formulations and modify  
25    approach or materials based on results.

1           And I would like to go to column 44 of the '231  
2 patent, line 14 through 22. Just let me know when you are  
3 there, Dr. Donovan.

4       A.     I'm there. I'm just reading.

5       Q.     And that portion of the patent provides the  
6 manufacturing techniques; correct?

7       A.     They may be used as manufacturing techniques. They  
8 may just be used as preparation techniques, but they're,  
9 they're a method that are used to treat material in  
10 pharmaceutical preparations.

11      Q.     I'd like to turn to Example 12 now, which starts at  
12 column 74, line 55.

13           Example 12 is entitled, safety and tolerability  
14 study of compound 1 in chronic lymphocytic leukemia.

15           Do you see that?

16      A.     I see that.

17      Q.     It provides a clinical study for all humans using an  
18 orally administered dose of 420 milligrams; correct?

19      A.     It provides a protocol. It provides no information  
20 about whether that study was ever conducted or what the  
21 results were.

22      Q.     And I'd like to turn to example 13 in example 75, and  
23 that's entitled, safety and efficacy of compound 1 in  
24 subjects with relapsed refractory mantle cell lymphoma.

25           Do you see that?

1 A. Yes.

2 Q. And Example 13 as well provides a clinical study for  
3 in humans using a 560 milligram dose of ibrutinib  
4 administered in multiple capsules; is that correct?

5 A. Can you point out what line it describes multiple  
6 capsules?

7 Q. Compound 1, line 53. Compound 1, 560 milligrams a day  
8 in the form of capsules.

9 A. Okay. I'm not sure that that tells me that it's in  
10 multiple capsules.

11 Q. But capsules were administered in Example 13?

12 A. It was administered in the form of capsules, yes.

13 Q. And finally, let's go to example 14 entitled Phase 2  
14 study of combination of compound 1 and rituximab in high  
15 risk chronic lymphocytic leukemia and small lymphocytic  
16 lymphoma patients.

17 Example 14 provides a Phase 2 study using an  
18 orally administered dose of three times 140 milligrams of  
19 ibrutinib capsules. You see that?

20 A. I do see that. Yes, again. It is the first conducted  
21 and data being obtained.

22 Q. You looked at Example 11 in the '231 patent in your  
23 direct; correct? I believe that's Table 6.

24 A. Yes.

25 Q. And in your opening report, you called Example 11 a



1     working example.

2                     Do you recall that?

3     A.     Not specifically.

4     Q.     Okay.  If we could go to your opening report at  
5     paragraph 29, please.  And I believe you should have a  
6     binder with your report, Dr. Donovan, but we'll bring that  
7     up as well.  29.

8     A.     Okay.  Which report is it that we're looking at?

9     Q.     Your opening report?

10    A.     Okay.  What page?

11    Q.     Paragraph 29.  29.  Yes.

12    A.     Okay.  So I see on the screen as what I've seen in the  
13    hard copy.  I'm in the same place.

14    Q.     And you called Example 11 a working example of the  
15    patent; is that correct?

16    A.     I called them working examples that were given in the  
17    patent, but they might not meet the, all of the description  
18    of claim 27.

19    Q.     But a person of skill would look to the entire  
20    specification, including the working example of Example 11;  
21    right?

22    A.     Well, they, they would -- they would see that in the,  
23    in the specification, certainly.

24    Q.     And Example 11 contains .25, 2.5 percent as a range of  
25    magnesium stearate as a lubricant; is that correct?

1 A. It's describing the level of magnesium stearate in  
2 that general tablet formulation between .25 and 2.5 percent,  
3 yes.

4 Q. And you testified on direct that 15 percent of  
5 lubricant could cause issues with the formulations; is that  
6 correct?

7 A. Yes. 15 percent of lubricant, you're going to have  
8 characteristics of the lubricant now giving characteristics  
9 to your final dosage form and those could be negative.

10 Q. And a POSA would have understood that in 2012; is that  
11 correct?

12 A. A POSA was aware of issues caused by lubricants in  
13 particular and other formulation components in 2012.

14 Q. And a POSA would have known that if too high of an  
15 amount of lubricant is used, the formulation could fail;  
16 right?

17 A. They would be aware that there have been manufacturing  
18 and performance problems with high levels of lubricant.  
19 Specific materials have specific properties and too much of  
20 them in a formulation may lead to negative performance  
21 attributes.

22 Q. You looked at the Handbook of Pharmaceutical  
23 Excipients and specifically the magnesium stearate portion,  
24 the portion that stated the lowest possible concentration  
25 should be used.

1 Do you recall that?

2 A. I recall that, yes.

3 Q. And a POSA would have known that as well in 2012; is  
4 that right?

5 A. That was known to POSAs in 2012, yes.

6 Q. And a POSA in 2012 similarly would have understood  
7 that effective lubrication could result in waterproofing of  
8 tablets or delayed dissolution of the drug substance;  
9 right?

10 A. That had been reported in other formulations, yes.

11 Q. I'd like to turn to DTX-2223, pharmaceutical  
12 pre-formulation and formulation, Dr. Donovan, which is a  
13 document you cited in your reply report; is that correct?

14 A. Yes, it is.

15 Q. And this is a book that a person of skill would have  
16 had available in June of 2012?

17 A. I believe the copyright that we infringe on this is  
18 about 2002, so, yes, this would have been available to a  
19 POSA.

20 Q. Let's turn to page 413 of this reference. And I would  
21 like to look at table 11.9. This is a list of lubricants  
22 and their uses.

23 Do you see that?

24 A. I see that.

25 Q. Polyethylene glycol, 4,000 and 6,000 are listed.

1 A. Mm-hmm.

2 Q. And the level required listed as two to ten percent?

3 A. I see that.

4 Q. And looking in the '231 patent, JTX-11, column 5,  
5 starting at line 63 and going over to column 36, that's the  
6 list of different lubricants in the patent you looked at on  
7 direct; right?

8 Column 45, please. 45. No worries. Starting  
9 at line 63 and over to the top of 46.

10 And that's the list of lubricants you looked at  
11 on direct; right, Dr. Donovan?

12 A. It is, yes.

13 Q. And polyethylene glycol 4,000 and 6,000 are listed in  
14 the patent as well; right?

15 A. Yes, they are.

16 Q. I want to look back at the table on 413 of DTX  
17 (inaudible). There we go. And there stearic acid is also  
18 listed; is that correct?

19 A. Yes.

20 Q. And the level required is .25 to 2 percent; is that  
21 right?

22 A. That's what's reported in the table.

23 Q. And if we could look back at the list of lubricants in  
24 the '231 patent, stearic acid is also listed as a lubricant;  
25 is that right?

1 A. Yes.

2 Q. And turning back again to the table on 413, sodium  
3 sterile fumarate is also listed?

4 A. It's listed in the table, yes.

5 Q. And that's a lubricant used by Sandoz?

6 A. I don't know.

7 Q. And the level required column is .5, 2 percent?

8 A. That's what the table says.

9 Q. And looking at the '231 patent, at the bottom of 45,  
10 sodium sterile fumarate is listed in the patent as suitable  
11 lubricant as well?

12 A. Yes, it is.

13 Q. I'd like to go to your slide DDX-7-25, please. And  
14 there you indicated that claim 27 provides a range of  
15 ibrutinib and the excipients; right?

16 A. A range of the amount in the formulation and the  
17 excipients?

18 Q. Yes.

19 A. Yes.

20 Q. Including a 40 to 50 percent weight by weight range of  
21 ibrutinib?

22 A. Yes. From claim 27, yes.

23 Q. And it was your testimony these ranges are broad; is  
24 that right?

25 A. Yes.

1 Q. I want to take a step back and I want to talk about  
2 drug content for a moment.

3 Even for an approved drug product, some  
4 variability in the amount of ingredient in each dosage form  
5 is allowed; correct?

6 A. Typically, yes.

7 Q. For example, not every 140-milligram capsule made by  
8 Sandoz is going to have exactly 140 milligrams of ibrutinib;  
9 right?

10 A. That's the usual understanding, yes.

11 Q. And drug companies typically provide specification for  
12 drug content uniformity to the FDA; is that right?

13 A. Yes.

14 Q. And they provide specifications for drug assay at the  
15 FDA?

16 A. What do you mean by drug assay?

17 Q. Drug uniformity assays to the FDA.

18 A. Can you -- can you be more specific about that?

19 Q. Looking at the content of drug uniformity in the  
20 product.

21 A. I still don't understand what you're asking me --

22 Q. Sure.

23 A. What information is provided to the FDA.

24 Q. So companies provide information on drug content  
25 uniformity specifications to FDA; correct?

1 A. They do.

2 Q. And those specifications can vary by as much as ten  
3 percent; right?

4 A. It depends.

5 Q. But they can vary by as much as ten percent; is that  
6 right?

7 A. Under the, under the general USP chapter on content  
8 uniformity, I suspect that it's about ten percent. I don't  
9 remember the exact numbers.

10 Q. Okay. I want to talk about what that means  
11 practically if it's about ten percent.

12 So let's say I have a formulation that's  
13 supposed to have about 45 percent weight by weight of  
14 ibrutinib. Okay?

15 A. Okay.

16 Q. And an assay measure that only reported 90 percent of  
17 that 45 percent would still fall within the specification;  
18 right?

19 A. It may. I don't know what the specification is, but  
20 if we're going to do plus or minus ten percent --

21 Q. And similarly, if you have a ten percent tolerance,  
22 you could have up to 110 percent of that 45 percent and  
23 still fall within the specification?

24 A. For the drug content, yes.

25 Q. Correct. So, in other words, if you did the math, the

1     assay could report as low as 41.5 percent of ibrutinib and  
2     as high as 49.5 percent of ibrutinib and still be within the  
3     specification; is that right?

4     A.     I need to do the math, but what you have said strikes  
5     me as being correct, yes.

6     Q.     And that would be the range that is tolerated for a  
7     single formulation; is that correct?

8     A.     Not necessarily, because what is being described in  
9     claim 27 and the amount, there's a situation where the  
10    amount of ibrutinib measured in the tablet or whatever  
11    tablet, a fine dosage form to think about, that the whole  
12    tablet weight was lower by ten percent. All the other  
13    components were there, present in the correct proportion,  
14    it's just the entire tablet weight was low.

15           Those content uniformity tests don't say  
16    anything about the content, directly say anything exactly  
17    about the content ratio of each of the components unless you  
18    actually measure each of the components.

19    Q.     Right. But the ultimate amount of ibrutinib could  
20    be as high as 49.5 percent and still be in the  
21    specification?

22    A.     I -- I'm not sure I know that I could agree with  
23    that.

24    Q.     Okay.

25    A.     Because that would require me to assume that there



1 was, you know, some other combinations were too low by ten  
2 percent and I'm not as familiar with that situation  
3 occurring in manufacturing and testing.

4 Q. Okay. But if you had 110 percent drug content  
5 uniformity specification, you could have an overage of up to  
6 ten percent of active ingredient and still be within the  
7 specification; is that right?

8 A. What do you mean by overage?

9 Q. The highest end of the range. If you have a dose  
10 content uniformity specification that varies from 90 to  
11 110 percent of the amount, then you could have a tolerance  
12 up to 110 percent of the active ingredient and still be  
13 within the specification.

14 A. Under some circumstances, that could be the case.

15 Q. You talked about a number of different oral dosage  
16 forms in your direct.

17 A. Yes.

18 Q. And I would like to look at your slide DDX7-22,  
19 and there you state that the claims cover any oral dosage  
20 form.

21 Do you see that?

22 A. Yes.

23 Q. When we look at claim 27, the claim requires  
24 microcrystalline cellulose, croscarmellose sodium, sodium  
25 lauryl sulfate and a lubricant.

1 A. Yes, or a combination potentially.

2 Q. And it's your opinion that the combination of  
3 microcrystalline cellulose, croscarmellose sodium,  
4 sodium lauryl sulfate and a lubricant like magnesium  
5 stearate are standard terms for solid oral formulations  
6 in particular?

7 A. Those materials get used in a lot of formulations  
8 intended for administration at a variety of sites, and so  
9 the -- I don't agree in particular. They are certainly used  
10 in oral pharmaceutical formulations, but they are also used  
11 in many other pharmaceutical formulations.

12 Q. And, Doctor, you were deposed in this case?

13 A. Yes, I was.

14 Q. And you gave truthful testimony at that deposition?

15 A. Yes, I did.

16 Q. And I'd like to pull up your transcript, 118:16  
17 through 119:6.

18 MS. ANDERSEN: And I believe the deposition  
19 transcript should be in her binder as well.

20 THE WITNESS: Do you know the DTX number?

21 MS. ANDERSEN: It should just be in your binder  
22 with expert reports and have your transcript.

23 THE COURT: So can I -- this is not the first  
24 time this has happened. I'm not used to the way folks, some  
25 of the folks are referring to deposition transcripts.

1 You've got -- what's the pending question?

2 MS. ANDERSEN: The pending question was: It's  
3 your opinion the combination of microcrystalline cellulose,  
4 croscarmellose sodium, sodium lauryl sulfate and a lubricant  
5 like magnesium stearate are standard materials for solid  
6 oral dosage forms in particular.

7 THE COURT: Okay. She answered the question.  
8 All right. And then you say, you were deposed in this case.

9 Are you suggesting that the answer to the  
10 question is inconsistent with what she testified at her  
11 deposition?

12 MS. ANDERSEN: Yes. She just said she wouldn't  
13 call them standard and at her deposition she said these are  
14 standard materials for solid formulations in particular.

15 THE COURT: Okay. So why don't you just ask  
16 her. She said here, what she said is, these materials get  
17 used in a lot of formulations. I don't agree in particular.  
18 They're certainly used.

19 So then why didn't you say, didn't you testify  
20 that they were standard when you testified in your  
21 deposition and she what she said? I mean, I guess is that  
22 what we're getting at?

23 MS. ANDERSEN: That's what we're getting at.

24 THE COURT: Let's do it that way. We'll save  
25 everybody a lot of time if that's how we do these instead of

1 going through the exercise of reading depositions.

2 THE WITNESS: Thank you, Your Honor.

3 MS. ANDERSEN: Yes. Of course, Your Honor. I  
4 would like to go to DDX-261 --

5 THE COURT: Ms. Andersen, I'm not saying you  
6 should abandon this. She might just admit that she said  
7 something different in her deposition and maybe she won't.  
8 If she won't, then you can confront her with her deposition.

9 I'm not telling you to move on. It's just  
10 confusing to me what -- I'm not even sure her answer is  
11 exactly inconsistent with what she said, so why don't you  
12 just ask her.

13 BY MR. ANDERSEN:

14 Q. Dr. Donovan, at your deposition you testified that  
15 solid formulations in particular contain combinations of  
16 microcrystalline cellulose, croscarmellose sodium, sodium  
17 lauryl sulfate and magnesium stearate; is that correct?

18 A. In the context of that portion of my deposition, yes,  
19 that those combinations are seen in topical oral dosage  
20 forms. Those materials are also seen in many other dosage  
21 forms designed for administration at other relative  
22 administrations.

23 Q. I'd like to go to DTX-2261, the Handbook of  
24 Pharmaceutical Excipients. And you talked about the  
25 handbook on direct; is that correct, Dr. Donovan?

1 A. Yes, I did.

2 Q. And a person of skill would have had access to the  
3 handbook in 2012; is that right?

4 A. Yes, they do.

5 Q. I would like to turn to page 129 and this is the  
6 monograph for crystalline -- microcrystalline cellulose;  
7 correct?

8 A. That's what it looks like on the screen. Do I have a  
9 hard copy of that?

10 Q. I think it's in your direct binder, Dr. Donovan?

11 A. I've got to get my direct binder then.

12 Q. And let me know when you are there.

13 A. My direct binder, I can find the monograph for  
14 magnesium stearate, but not the monograph for  
15 microcrystalline cellulose. Are you sure it's in my  
16 binder?

17 Q. It should be. We have it on the screen if it's not,  
18 if it's not there.

19 A. Okay. Well, I will use the screen version because I  
20 don't find it in my materials.

21 Q. Thank you.

22 So if you turn to section seven of the  
23 microcrystalline cellulose, applications in pharmaceutical  
24 formulation of technology?

25 A. Yes, okay.

1 Q. It states, microcrystalline cellulose is widely used  
2 in pharmaceuticals primarily as a binder/diluent in oral  
3 tablet and capsule formulation.

4 Do you see that?

5 A. I see that.

6 Q. And that is something a POSA would have known in  
7 2012?

8 A. A POSA would have understood that microcrystalline  
9 cellulose is used in oral tablet and capsule formulations,  
10 yes.

11 Q. Okay. And I'd like to look at the monograph for  
12 croscarmellose sodium, please.

13 A. Okay. I'm going to ask you in my answer that  
14 regardless of what the monograph literally states,  
15 microcrystalline cellulose is in plenty of other dosage  
16 forms, nasal spray dosage forms in particular that I'm most  
17 familiar with.

18 Q. But to be clear, Dr. Donovan, this portion, the  
19 applications in pharmaceutical formulations in technology  
20 says microcrystalline cellulose is widely used in  
21 pharmaceuticals primarily as a binder/diluent in oral tablet  
22 and capsule formulations; right?

23 A. That's the way the author chose to write that. It's  
24 used in a lot of pharmaceutical formulations.

25 Q. I'd like to look at page 206. I apologize if you

1 don't have it. We thought you did. That's on the screen.  
2 That's the monograph for croscarmellose sodium?

3 A. Can the person in charge of video increase the size of  
4 that because I'm reading on a small screen.

5 Q. And can you see that, Dr. Donovan?

6 A. Yes, thank you.

7 Q. And, again, looking at section seven, applications in  
8 pharmaceutical formulation or technology states,  
9 croscarmellose sodium is used in oral pharmaceutical  
10 formulations as a disintegrant for capsules, tablets, and  
11 granules.

12 Do you see that?

13 A. Yes. That's telling us how it's used in oral  
14 pharmaceutical formulations.

15 Q. And that's something that a POSA would have known in  
16 2012; right?

17 A. Yes. It can be used in oral pharmaceutical  
18 formulations as a disintegrant in capsule, tablets and  
19 granules. It can be used in other formulations also.

20 Q. But the reference provides that it's used specifically  
21 in capsules, tablets and granules; is that right?

22 A. No, it doesn't provide that specifically. It just  
23 says, in oral formulations, it's used as a disintegrant.

24 Q. In oral formulations?

25 A. Well, it's used in oral formulations as a

1     disintegrant.

2     Q.     And continuing with disintegrants, I'd like to look  
3     back at the '231 patent, JTX-11, column 44, line 63 through  
4     65.

5             And this passage provides that disintegrants  
6     help rupturing the dosage form matrix by swelling or  
7     capillary action when moisture is absorbed into the dosage  
8     form.

9             Do you see that?

10    A.     I see that.

11    Q.     And not all oral dosage forms are going to require  
12    rupturing the dosage form matrix by swelling or capillary  
13    action when moisture is absorbed; right?

14    A.     Can you repeat that again.

15    Q.     Not all oral dosage forms are going to require  
16    rupturing the dosage form matrix by swelling or capillary  
17    action when moisture is absorbed into the dosage form;  
18    right?

19    A.     They might not require that and that characteristic  
20    might be -- you know, it's a matter of the amount of  
21    croscarmellose that's included, exactly how much swelling  
22    and how much, whether we get to rupturing or not occurs.

23    Q.     For example, a solution wouldn't require rupturing  
24    the dosage form matrix by swelling or capillary action  
25    when moisture is absorbed into it; right?



1 A. In its final composition as the solution, all of  
2 the material in solution, no, it won't require that, but  
3 during production or something, I don't know. There's  
4 nothing to tell me that -- stuff like that might not have  
5 occurred.

6 Q. Right. But as a final solution, you agree it would  
7 not occur?

8 A. The disintegration action wouldn't occur, but the  
9 substance that could act as a disintegrant might still be  
10 in the solution.

11 Q. But the disintegrating action would not occur; is that  
12 correct?

13 A. In the final composition in its final state, the  
14 disintegrant would no longer be acting to rupture the  
15 material, but it may have acted in the manufacturing or  
16 formulation stage.

17 Q. Turning from disintegrants to lubricants, you agree  
18 that lubricants typically help with the handling and  
19 manufacturing of the composition by reducing frictional  
20 forces between formulation components and contact surfaces  
21 of manufacturing equipment; right?

22 A. In general, that's their most, that is their typical  
23 primary purpose, yes.

24 THE COURT: Hold on. I'm sorry, Ms. Andersen.  
25 I think Mr. Abhyankar is standing up. Hold on. Let me

1 switch my screen here.

2 Is there an objection? You're standing?

3 MR. ABHYANKAR: Oh, no. I don't have an  
4 objection, Judge Connolly. I'm just standing here watching.

5 THE COURT: You just popped up on my screen.

6 All right. Sorry, Ms. Andersen. I disrupted  
7 your flow. Sorry.

8 MS. ANDERSEN: Not a problem, Your Honor.

9 BY MR. ANDERSEN:

10 Q. And you would agree, Dr. Donovan, that frictional  
11 physical forces between formulation components and contact  
12 surfaces of manufacturing equipment are common for capsules  
13 and tablets; right?

14 A. In particular, on most of the high speed manufacturing  
15 equipment, yes.

16 MS. ANDERSEN: I have no further questions at  
17 this time.

18 THE COURT: All right. Thank you, Ms. Andersen.

19 All right, Mr. Abhyankar, do you have any  
20 followup, redirect?

21 MR. ABHYANKAR: Just a few questions. Can we  
22 have a five-minute break, Your Honor, if that's okay?

23 THE COURT: Well, if you have a few questions,  
24 why don't we finish it out?

25 MR. ABHYANKAR: Fair enough.

1 THE COURT: Dr. Donovan, you're good to go for a  
2 couple more minutes?

3 THE WITNESS: Yes. I'm fine, Your Honor. Thank  
4 you.

5 THE COURT: All right. Let's go ahead.

6 MR. ABHYANKAR: Could you pull up JTX-11, column  
7 3, beginning at line 62, column 4. Column 3. Column 3. I  
8 think it was line 62, column 4, line 25.

9 REDIRECT EXAMINATION

10 BY MR. ABHYANKAR:

11 Q. Dr. Donovan, do you recall Ms. Andersen directed you  
12 to these portions or this portion of the specification  
13 regarding the crystalline forms of ibrutinib described in  
14 the '231?

15 A. Yes, I remember.

16 Q. Are these properties listed here, are those properties  
17 of the crystalline form that a formulator is focused on  
18 typically when designing a formulation?

19 A. No, not typically. The formulator anticipates that  
20 the material that they have been given as the active  
21 substance to formulate has been characterized somehow and  
22 that there may be reasons during formulation to then use  
23 X-ray powder diffraction to then evaluate the crystal form  
24 of the material, but having the X-ray powder diffraction  
25 parameters themselves as a guide, the crystal structure

1     itself is not typically a useful -- you know, the 2-Theta  
2     angles and so forth don't directly tell a formulator about  
3     compatibility with other materials or much of anything else  
4     really about the substance. But it's certainly important as  
5     far as assuring and being able to test that you still have  
6     the crystal form at the end of your formulation and  
7     manufacturing process.

8     Q.     Got it. And Dr. Williams did not point to any of  
9     these properties, you know, for purposes of his opinions  
10    regarding the '231 patent; is that right?

11    A.     Not that I recall.

12    Q.     And to confirm, the only aqueous solubility  
13    information as disclosed in the '231 patent are forms A and  
14    B?

15    A.     That is what I have found, that there's pH dependent  
16    solubility information on form A and one solubility measure  
17    for form B.

18    Q.     And I think, I think you testified about this earlier  
19    with Ms. Andersen, but is aqueous solubility one of the more  
20    important physicochemical properties a formulator would look  
21    at when designing formulation?

22    A.     It's certainly a very important property because just  
23    on a general basis, I have to be able to understand how or  
24    project how the total dose that was administered is going to  
25    go into solution at the site I'm going to administer at and

1 it doesn't necessarily have to do that all of the time, but  
2 I need an environment where it's possible to have that  
3 happen and so I need to know about the solubility even to  
4 begin to identify an appropriate dosage form and then  
5 knowing about the solubility tells me things about how that  
6 drug substance may likely be absorbed or conditions I need  
7 to try to put it into to have it.

8 Q. And do you recall your question with Ms. Anderson  
9 regarding using an amount of lubricant up to 15 percent  
10 formulation?

11 A. Somewhat vaguely.

12 Q. In your opinion, would a POSA know what the dividing  
13 lines would be between the amount of lubricant that would  
14 work in a formulation versus the amount of lubricant that  
15 wouldn't?

16 A. No, because formulations are multicomponent mixtures  
17 with material that performs multiple functions. So just  
18 knowing a value, no, they wouldn't know.

19 Q. And if I could have Mr. Ferrare pull up slide, I think  
20 it's 26, please. And just to confirm, is claim 27 limited  
21 to a capsule?

22 A. No. Claim 27 allows for any pharmaceutical  
23 formulation for oral administration.

24 Q. And it's not limited to a tablet?

25 A. No. It's limited to the formulations that we could

1 deliver orally.

2 Q. A continued oral dosage form? In your, any oral  
3 dosage form?

4 THE COURT: Just to be clear, Dr. Donovan, are  
5 you sure it's any oral dosage form?

6 THE WITNESS: Well --

7 THE COURT: I'm saying that facetiously. I  
8 think we've established it three times. Okay? All right.  
9 We're good. Thank you very much for your testimony.

10 MR. ABHYANKAR: All right. Thank you.

11 (Witness excused.)

12 THE COURT: All right. We could take a break  
13 now. What's going to be next?

14 MR. ABHYANKAR: I believe we have more  
15 deposition testimony for Your Honor from one of the  
16 inventors on the '231 patent and as well as the -- actually,  
17 the main inventor on the '548 as well.

18 THE COURT: And how long is that going to be?

19 MR. ABHYANKAR: I believe it's around  
20 30 minutes. Is that right? Forty, 40 minutes.

21 THE COURT: Then what's after that?

22 MR. GUTMAN: The direct examination of Dr.  
23 Fassihi for the Alvogen matter.

24 THE COURT: We'll take a ten-minute break. When  
25 we come back at 3:00, each side be ready to have a lawyer

1 talk about the significance of the testimony we've just  
2 heard for the last couple hours to answer some questions I  
3 might have about enablement law and written description law.  
4 Okay? It won't be long, but just designate somebody,  
5 please.

6 All right. I will talk to you at 3:00. Thanks.

7 (Short recess taken.)

8 - - -

9 (Proceedings resumed after the short recess.)

10 THE COURT: All right. So let's see. Here are  
11 my questions. I'm trying to understand just as a matter of  
12 law. I never had a written description or enablement case.

13 So does everyone agree that the written  
14 description must convey that the inventors were in  
15 possession of the full scope of the invention at the filing  
16 date?

17 Ms. Andersen, alphabetical order, you're first.

18 MS. ANDERSEN: I think the full scope language  
19 really comes from enablement law, not written description.  
20 Certainly, it has to describe the invention, show the  
21 inventors we're in possession of it, but the full scope  
22 language I think really comes from enablement.

23 THE COURT: Frankly, that's the language that's  
24 hanging me up and I wanted to talk about it.

25 So the bottom line is you're saying you don't

1 agree, that that is not a fair statement of the law, that  
2 it's overstating it for written description?

3 MS. ANDERSEN: I think that to the extent they  
4 are saying that every single possible conceivable  
5 formulation has to be described in the patent, which is what  
6 the full scope sounds like, that is certainly not the law.

7 THE COURT: Okay. Ms. Clayton, it was your  
8 slide.

9 MS. CLAYTON: Yes. Your Honor, I do believe  
10 that's the language that is used. I don't -- I don't  
11 disagree that, you know, if you were to do a combination  
12 permutation calculation of that claim, you would come up  
13 with, I don't know, tens of thousands of formulations. Not  
14 every single formulation would have to be explicitly set  
15 forth, but you do have to at least set forth, for example,  
16 the ranges, right, of the lubricant that you are claiming.  
17 And here they have not even come close to setting forth that  
18 particular range.

19 THE COURT: All right. Well, let me stop you  
20 there.

21 So for starters, are you telling me that at some  
22 point you're going to show me a case which is going to say  
23 point blank that for the written description to pass muster,  
24 it must convey that the inventors were in possession of the  
25 full scope. There's going to be some case law that says it



1 has to be the full scope of the invention?

2 MS. CLAYTON: Yes, I believe that's true, Your  
3 Honor. I think I can have a cite for you in just a moment.

4 THE COURT: Okay. All right. But even you as  
5 you acknowledge, let's assume some of the case law says  
6 that. I mean, it strikes me, I also know there are cases  
7 out there that say, hey, ranges are permissible. Right?  
8 You can have a range.

9 MS. CLAYTON: Right. We don't disagree with  
10 that.

11 THE COURT: At some point, to Ms. Anderson's  
12 point, if you have a range, you have an infinite number of  
13 points within the range. Right? You agree with that? It  
14 can't just be the law that you have to prove every single --  
15 that just wouldn't make sense. The law can't be that. But,  
16 on the other hand, I'm inferring from something you said,  
17 that you are going to take the position, and I guess the  
18 question is: Does the case law support this, that you do  
19 have to at least in the written description convey both ends  
20 of the range that's claimed.

21 Is that your position?

22 MS. CLAYTON: That is certainly our position.  
23 Yes, Your Honor.

24 THE COURT: And you think there's case law out  
25 there that says that? The minimum and the maximum of the

1 claims range has to be taught or conveyed in the written  
2 description?

3 MS. CLAYTON: I don't know if it specifically  
4 talks about ranges, about the language that's used, but I do  
5 believe there is case law that supports that general  
6 proposition.

7 THE COURT: Ms. Andersen, what's your reaction  
8 to that?

9 MS. ANDERSEN: My reaction is that this shows  
10 possession commensurate with the scope. It doesn't require  
11 what Ms. Clayton is suggesting. I mean, the Ariad cases  
12 said you don't even need an example to have written  
13 description, so I don't think it's the case that, you know,  
14 you have to show both ends of the range of some working  
15 example. You just have to show possession of, that the  
16 inventors possessed formulations commensurate with the claim  
17 and I think we have done that. We've shown our working  
18 examples and that a POSA could work from them. We've also  
19 shown there are a lot of properties of the active compound  
20 and so I don't agree with what Ms. Clayton is saying.

21 THE COURT: Mr. Gutman, do you have anything to  
22 add?

23 MR. GUTMAN: I do, Your Honor. With respect to  
24 ranges, I think I can clarify that issue.

25 You don't need to -- in order to claim a range,

1 a range is defined by the endpoint, and so you really have  
2 to have possession of the defined range, which means in the  
3 specification, you must say that the range is set out with  
4 these end points.

5 So you can't say, like, let's say there's a  
6 range 1 to 100, but you set out in the, in the specification  
7 5 to 23. You can't claim a range of 1 to 100 if you don't  
8 have a description in your specification that defines the  
9 claimed range.

10 THE COURT: All right. I get it. You and Ms.  
11 Clayton are on the same page. This is going to be a legal  
12 question. But I will tell you what I will do is, I don't  
13 want briefs, but if anybody wants to get me, you know,  
14 Monday or Tuesday, like, the best case or two that you think  
15 supports these two different positions, because I think I  
16 understand the positions, and I will take a case. You can  
17 do a cover letter that says, hey, here are the cases that we  
18 think best address the issue of what is required to  
19 establish the full scope of the invention for the written  
20 description requirement. Okay? All right.

21 MR. GUTMAN: Your Honor --

22 THE COURT: Yes?

23 MR. GUTMAN: May I just address the second point  
24 very briefly about possession of a genus?

25 THE COURT: I didn't ask --

1 MR. GUTMAN: The full scope, the full scope of  
2 the claim, what that means in the context of written  
3 description law.

4 THE COURT: Well, I think I kind of asked for  
5 that. For me, I just want this, this is what I'm looking  
6 for. Do you want to show me the range? I don't want to get  
7 into this genus thing. I think that's a bigger question and  
8 we've got to tackle that before lunch. And I just think  
9 we'll never finish this evening. So let's save that. I'm  
10 going to come back to that incidentally. I think that's a  
11 huge issue.

12 So I've got a quick question for you all. There  
13 was some testimony in the depositions this morning that  
14 refer to crystal structure. I'm going to assume crystal and  
15 crystalline are synonymous when we're talking about crystal  
16 structure and crystalline structure.

17 Do you agree, Mr. Gutman?

18 MR. GUTMAN: Yes Your Honor. A crystal is  
19 crystalline.

20 THE COURT: Do you agree, Ms. Clayton?

21 MS. CLAYTON: Yes, I agree, Your Honor.

22 THE COURT: Mr. Sipes, do you agree?

23 MR. SIPES: For purposes of this case, if you  
24 want to hear to something referred to as crystalline  
25 ibrutinib, it's means it's in a crystal form. That's

1 correct.

2 THE COURT: There was deposition testimony from  
3 the inventors. They start talking about crystal structure  
4 and nobody said anything about it. I'm just assuming that  
5 is the exact same thing as crystalline structure.

6 MR. SIPES: Without having it right in front of  
7 me, I believe that would be the case. I've hate to speak  
8 for the inventors without having the exact passage in front  
9 of me, but I believe that would be the case.

10 THE COURT: Okay. All right. Then last thing,  
11 I'm going to let you, both sides, submit cases. And I'm not  
12 looking for argument and I won't read argument. Here's what  
13 I'm inviting a submission of cases for. And basically, it's  
14 this. Is a POSA precluded from considering information that  
15 was disclosed in a patent application or patent that should  
16 not have been disclosed in that application or patent under  
17 the applicable regulations that govern patent applications  
18 and patents in the PTO? All right? Does that make sense?  
19 You are looking a little perplexed, Mr. Sipes.

20 MR. SIPES: I will confess I'm not quite sure  
21 what it's germane to.

22 THE COURT: Well, here's what it's germane to.  
23 I thought you would know exactly what it's germane to.

24 I've got an expert witness who says even though  
25 he's not a lawyer, he's a POSA, he's a scientist, he

1 wouldn't look at an international patent that's referenced  
2 by incorporation because he has got a slide that tells him  
3 some patent regulation says it shouldn't have been in that  
4 application.

5 And when I heard this, as you can probably tell  
6 from my questioning of him, I thought that sounded -- it was  
7 incredible to me that a POSA would be precluded from looking  
8 at what is in a public document.

9 And so like I'm thinking to myself, so if the  
10 Patent Examiner made a mistake and allowed something to be  
11 put publicly in a patent, I'm going to be shocked if the  
12 case law says that we should go back and pretend it was not  
13 disclosed in the patent, and a POSA wouldn't have considered  
14 it.

15 But maybe Alvogen has a different view. I mean,  
16 I think they must have a different view, so I don't want  
17 argument on it, but what I want is case law. Not that I  
18 expect anybody to be able to find a case, but if there's a  
19 case out there that says somehow we're supposed to pretend  
20 that it doesn't exist in the mind of a POSA in a public  
21 document because apparently it didn't comport with. And  
22 it's not clear to me it did not comport with the disclosure  
23 of the IPO, but putting that aside for the moment, we'll get  
24 that in post-trial briefing perhaps. Let's at least follow  
25 through on that.

1           So does everybody understand the mission if you  
2 have a case? Mr. Gutman, you are the one I think that's  
3 actually going to have to come up with a case that says  
4 this.

5           Do you understand the question?

6           MR. GUTMAN: I believe so, Your Honor.

7           THE COURT: Okay.

8           MR. SIPES: Your Honor, and we will do our best  
9 to find cases that address -- you know, our position is they  
10 were not forbidden from using the priority application to  
11 address the -- but I understand the question.

12          THE COURT: Yes. It's just hard for me to  
13 think, you could probably come up with a hypo, something.  
14 Maybe there's a case that some trade secret was disclosed  
15 publicly and should that be considered by a POSA, you know,  
16 something like that.

17          MR. SIPES: I understand. We will, we will look  
18 for something.

19          THE COURT: Okay.

20          MR. SIPES: Your Honor, as well as long as we're  
21 making case law submissions, if we find a case addressing a  
22 genus of crystalline form, we will submit that as well. If  
23 we find a case.

24          THE COURT: Mr. Gutman should have and Ms.  
25 Clayton as well. I mean, yes. I mean, I'm not looking for

1 briefing, but I'll saying if you find a good case, that you  
2 say, hey, this might help me as I listen to the rest of the  
3 evidence, yes, that's fine.

4 MR. SIPES: We will look for that, Your Honor.

5 THE COURT: All right. That goes for everybody.  
6 Okay.

7 MS. CLAYTON: Your Honor, just to be clear,  
8 you did mention enablement, but on enablement, you would be  
9 interested in that type of case law? We believe we have a  
10 case that's literally on all fours with the '231 patent.

11 THE COURT: Here's the thing. I notice Ms.  
12 Andersen, you know, I opened up by saying I had some  
13 questions on written description, enablement, and I asked  
14 did anybody disagree with your slide definition of written  
15 description and what Ms. Andersen said was, full scope  
16 she thought really was enablement law, not written  
17 description law, and so because of that, I thought, it  
18 sounds like, and I thought let's tackle this written  
19 description thing first.

20 MR. SIPES: We can submit cases on enablement,  
21 too, Your Honor, just so that you have it.

22 THE COURT: That's fine. Mr. Gutman, Ms.  
23 Clayton, go ahead. You guys can do the same thing.

24 MS. CLAYTON: You just want the cases,  
25 nothing else, just the cases that you think are best for



1 the issues?

2 THE COURT: When say issues, I was really trying  
3 to narrow the issues.

4 MS. CLAYTON: Yes. Written description and  
5 enablement with respect to Sandoz and I guess there's  
6 another issue with respect to Alvogen.

7 THE COURT: Right. But keep in mind, it's not  
8 just with respect -- it's not like your entire case.

9 MS. CLAYTON: Understood, Your Honor.

10 THE COURT: All right. So then here is the last  
11 thing I'm going to do and I know it's a lot of work, but you  
12 know what, I'm going to have to work all weekend. So what  
13 I'm going to allow you to do is this. With the claims that  
14 have been put in issue to date for both infringement and  
15 invalidity, I'm going to let you, the three of you submit to  
16 me on Monday essentially a decision tree and it's going to  
17 be, you know, you take the claim and for infringement or  
18 validity. You just, you say, here are the questions and in  
19 the order I should answer them. All right? That if you  
20 were me, if you were making -- I don't want you to provide  
21 substantive answers. I just want you to ask the questions.  
22 And, you know, so the question, let's say, number one, you  
23 know, did Alvogen infringe, you know, whatever claim -- I'm  
24 sorry, they are all jumbled in my head right now.

25 I don't mean I want the law. What I mean is I

1 want specifically, you know, did Alvogen do this? I would  
2 like you to narrow. I would be very intrigued by the three  
3 of you for every claim when it comes to infringement or  
4 invalidity that's at issue giving me the order of the  
5 specific question I ought to ask.

6 Again, if you start just quoting me from the law  
7 and all of that, I probably won't even read it. I am  
8 looking for the specific, hey, here's what you'd better  
9 focus on to answer this question.

10 Does that make sense?

11 MS. CLAYTON: Yes, Your Honor.

12 MR. SIPES: It does Your Honor. You may know  
13 from my opening, I like decision trees. We'll put them  
14 together.

15 THE COURT: Thank you, all. Any other questions  
16 on that, Mr. Gutman? Do you have a question?

17 MR. GUTMAN: No. I understand your last point,  
18 Your Honor. One thing that I wanted to suggest because  
19 most of the issues that are being submitted to Your Honor  
20 are with respect to questions that you had concerning,  
21 for example, Sandoz's patents at issue, you had raised  
22 some questions yesterday regarding inherency. I mean, we  
23 can submit cases to you that answer some of your questions  
24 regarding inherency because I think that would be of  
25 value in considering the issues pertaining to the '455

1 patent as opposed to the '548 patent, which only applies  
2 to Sandoz.

3 THE COURT: But I thought you basically -- I  
4 thought the plaintiffs backed off on that position about  
5 inherency, whether I should consider the ANDA.

6 I thought --

7 MR. GUTMAN: Oh, yes. No. I was talking  
8 more -- I apologize, Your Honor. I was speaking more to  
9 Your Honor's questions regarding what is the law of  
10 inherency with respect to anticipation.

11 You seem to --

12 THE COURT: Inherency and anticipation. Oh, I  
13 see. No briefing, but if you have a good case that you  
14 think really explains -- the issue I was grappling with is,  
15 you know, basically, it just seems to me there's at least  
16 some intersection of the idea of inherent anticipation with  
17 obviousness and trying to figure out how do you -- how do  
18 you distinguish between those two. If you've got a case  
19 that helpfully discusses that, I will read that case.

20 I don't want to read just kind of cases  
21 generally about anticipation and that kind of thing. All  
22 right.

23 MR. GUTMAN: I understand, Your Honor.

24 THE COURT: All right. Thanks. All right.  
25 Thank you, all.

Purro - deposition designations

1 MR. SIPES: Thank you.

2 THE COURT: Let's go forward.

3 MS. CLAYTON: Your Honor, at this time we're  
4 going to introduce the deposition testimony of Mr. Norbert  
5 Purro. He is one of the named inventors on both the '548  
6 and '231 patents as well as the '455 patent.

7 Mr. Purro is a former employee of Pharmacyclics  
8 and was one of their 30(b)(6) witnesses. He was deposed by  
9 the defendants on November 12th, 2019.

10 You will hear 46 minutes and 26 seconds of  
11 testimony. Twenty-three minutes and 10 seconds will be  
12 charged to defendants and 23 minutes and 16 seconds will be  
13 charged to plaintiffs.

14 THE COURT: All right. Thank you.

15 (The videotaped deposition of Norbert Purro was  
16 played as follows.)

17 "Question: Thank you, Mr. Purro. Good morning.  
18 Could you please state your full name and address for the  
19 record?

20 "Answer: My full name is Norbert Maximilian  
21 Purro. I live at 15460 Corrine Drive in Los Gatos,  
22 California. Zip, 95032.

23 "Question: Mr. Purro, let's just go through  
24 your background. Can you tell me about your educational  
25 background? Did you get an undergraduate degree?

Purro - deposition designations

1                   "Answer: I have an undergraduate degree from  
2                   Switzerland where I went to school. I graduated in 1979,  
3                   which is what -- what would be roughly equivalent to a  
4                   bachelor's degree in the U.S.

5                   "Question: What degree did you graduate with?

6                   "Answer: Chemistry.

7                   "Question: Any particular discipline or just  
8                   chemistry generally?

9                   "Answer: I did a -- I also studied  
10                  pharmaceutical sciences, which is called ganik in German.

11                  "Question: Sorry, sir. Could you say that  
12                  again?

13                  "Answer: Ganik, G-A-N-I-K.

14                  "Question: And did you receive a degree in  
15                  pharmaceutical sciences?

16                  "Answer: I got a certificate for finishing my  
17                  school as a chemist.

18                  "Question: Did you have any experience working  
19                  with pharmaceutical formulations as part of your course  
20                  work?

21                  "Answer: Yes, I did.

22                  "Question: Okay. Can you provide some  
23                  background on with a types of --

24                  "Answer: The way my schooling was structured,  
25                  that I was actually working for Ciba-Geigy as I was

Purro - deposition designations

1 attending school and I was doing intern work at Ciba-Geigy  
2 for three years at different disciplines. One was solid  
3 oral dosage forms. One was semi-liquids. And the third one  
4 was parenteral formulations. So I received training and  
5 schooling in these three disciplines.

6 "Question: Where did you go after that?

7 "Answer: I joined Pharmacyclics.

8 "Question: Is that in 1993?

9 "Answer: I left Hybritech in January of 1994,  
10 to be precise.

11 "Question: Okay.

12 "Answer: I joined Pharmacyclics in February of  
13 1994.

14 "Question: What was your role at Pharmacyclics  
15 when you joined in 1994?

16 "Answer: I joined as a formulation scientist.  
17 I was to formulate our parenteral products and find contract  
18 manufacturers that can manufacture them for us so we can  
19 use them as clinical trial materials for our -- for our  
20 studies.

21 "Question: Let's go back. How long were you at  
22 Pharmacyclics? From 1994 to your until when?

23 "Answer: Until 2012.

24 "Question: What were your responsibilities for  
25 these lead development candidates?

Purro - deposition designations

1           "Answer: The main responsibility was to a --  
2       come up with a suitable formulation so they perhaps could be  
3       evaluated in pre-clinical research and then develop that  
4       into a suitable formulation that could be used in the human  
5       clinical trials.

6           "If you find manufacturers that could  
7       manufacture the clinical trial materials for us, and all  
8       associated documentation, regulatory, specification  
9       generation, et cetera, that would make it into a clinical  
10      trial material.

11          "Question: And when you say you came up with  
12      suitable formulations, did you work with third-party  
13      companies to do so?

14          "Answer: We had in-house capabilities to  
15      prepare formulations and to conduct animal studies. So most  
16      of that work was done by myself with my hands, okay. At  
17      times we used the contract laboratories for analytical  
18      purposes for maybe methods that we didn't have in-house.

19          "Question: Were you the only one at  
20      Pharmacyclics that was responsible for formulating these  
21      drugs?

22          "Answer: Yes.

23          "Question: Can you give me some background as  
24      to your recollection of 2006 and what led to your  
25      involvement with the BTK inhibitor that ultimately became

Purro - deposition designations

1     ibrutinib?

2                   "Answer.  I was responsible for formulation  
3     development.  The company decided that we are going to  
4     formulate all these BTK inhibitors, so I responded to that  
5     by starting developing the compounds, as I stated initially  
6     for a preclinical work.

7                   "Question:  What did you do when you started  
8     developing the compounds?  You can answer.

9                   "Answer:  I personally prepared formulations  
10    that could be used in animal studies that the company  
11    decided to conduct.

12                  "Question:  How did you prepare these  
13    formulations?

14                  "Answer:  I was responsible for the formulation  
15    development.  I also had responsibility of my formulation  
16    laboratory that allowed me to prepare formulations.

17                  "Question:  Did you -- were you responsible for  
18    selecting the excipients that were incorporated into the  
19    formulations, for example?

20                  "Answer:  I would choose the excipient -- the  
21    excipients that were appropriate for the preclinical  
22    studies, yes.

23                  "Question:  Were you responsible for choosing  
24    the excipients that were used in the human clinical trials ?

25                  "Answer:  Yes.



## Purro - deposition designations

1                   "Question: Were you working with others in  
2                   developing the formulation for ibrutinib?

3                   "Answer: I was responsible for the development,  
4                   so I had some assistants from research assistance, some that  
5                   may have worked for me for a time or two. But I drove the  
6                   development.

7                   "Question: Mr. Purro, I've handed you what's  
8                   marked as Defendants' Exhibit 3. Let me know if you  
9                   recognize this document?

10                  "Answer: This is the e-mail that I wrote, so.

11                  "Question: Can you tell me what this e-mail is  
12                  about?

13                  "Answer: This was written on or about the time  
14                  when we were going to initiate the clinical trial  
15                  manufacturing. I had worked with Pharmatek. They were  
16                  my -- they were going to go to be my clinical trial  
17                  manufacturers, right.

18                  "So I'm giving them some guidance on a -- what  
19                  appears to be a project plan. They used to split up the  
20                  project plans into Phase 1, 2, 3, so forth. So it looks  
21                  like I had reviewed the project plan and given some guidance  
22                  on -- on -- comments on the different faces that they  
23                  proposed.

24                  "Question: At the time you wrote this e-mail,  
25                  if you go to the fourth full -- fourth full paragraph down

Purro - deposition designations

1 where it says, 'we currently have two liquid formulations'.

2 "Do you see that?

3 "Answer: Yes.

4 "Question. At the time of this e-mail, did you  
5 have two liquid formulations, one being a solution and  
6 another a suspension for the PCI-32765 compound?

7 "Answer: I cannot make that out from this  
8 paragraph.

9 "Question. Well, you wrote that, we currently  
10 have two liquid formulations, one being a solution, the  
11 other a suspension; right?

12 "Answer: Yes.

13 "Question: What did you mean by that?

14 "Answer: Yes, so we must have had two liquid  
15 formulations that we were using in pre-clinicals, right.

16 "Question: And in the following paragraph, you  
17 were asking Pharmatek to develop a capsule formulation that  
18 is intended to replace the -- the liquid formulations that  
19 you had already; right?

20 "Answer: I can read what it says here. Okay?  
21 And the -- we would have provided Pharmatek with a proposed  
22 formulation and asked them to develop that into a capsule  
23 formulation that can be used in clinical trials based on our  
24 leadership.

25 "Question: Okay. And this e-mail indicates you

Purro - deposition designations

1 were asking them to develop a capsule formulation to replace  
2 the formulations that you had come up with, correct?

3 "You can answer.

4 "Answer: We would be asking to develop a  
5 material in the form of a capsule that we can take to  
6 clinical trials. So there's more steps than just a -- this  
7 has to go into the GMP system. So it has to be developed so  
8 you can manufacture it. That's what we're asking them to do  
9 here.

10 "Question: Is it fair to say, then, that  
11 Pharmatek is a company outside Pharmacyclics that you worked  
12 with to develop the formulation for PCI-327652?

13 "Answer: Pharmatek is a company that we worked  
14 with to prepare the capsules that we can use in human  
15 clinical trials, and in that process, there needs to be some  
16 adjustment so you can manufacture the capsule in a -- in a  
17 reasonable manner. And that's a collaborated effort. The  
18 formulation was given by us.

19 "Question: What formulation did you provide  
20 Pharmatek?

21 "Answer: We provided the formulation that had  
22 the excipients and the approximate ratios spelled out.

23 "Question: Have you seen any documents that  
24 show the formulation, including the excipients and the  
25 approximate ratios, that you specifically provided to

1     Pharmacyclics?

2                   "Answer:  I have seen a project plan, or we  
3     asked them to evaluate the manufacturability with an  
4     allowance to just one of the components, which is a -- which  
5     was used as a diluent.

6                   "Question:  So you've seen a project plan asking  
7     them to evaluate the manufacturability of ibrutinib with one  
8     of the components that was used as a diluent?

9                   "Answer:  Yes.

10                  "Question:  What about any other components, any  
11     other components that were identified to Pharmatek by you or  
12     anyone else at Pharmacyclics?

13                  "Answer:  A project plan spelled it out  
14     particularly, that the diluent may have to be adjusted in  
15     order to -- to get a capsule that's full, which is a pretty  
16     -- pretty common thing to do.

17                  "Question:  Mr. Purro, you can proceed to answer  
18     my question, which was, was Pharmatek responsible for  
19     adjusting the diluent?

20                  "Answer:  We had asked them to evaluate the  
21     diluent.  We were responsible for accepting the parameters  
22     that they came up with.  They were the manufacturers and are  
23     best suited to evaluate that, bring it back to us and for us  
24     to say, yes, that's good, or, no, that's not good.

25                  "Question:  Were the excipients used in the

Purro - deposition designations

1 liquid formulations that you developed for the animal  
2 studies the same excipients used in the capsule formulation  
3 Pharmatek developed?

4 "Answer: I would have to think no. There  
5 might have been overlap, but usually the excipients are  
6 quite different for liquid than -- than the solid  
7 formulations.

8 "Question: If I understood your previous  
9 testimony, it was Pharmatek that was responsible for  
10 adjusting the excipients and then you would sign off on it;  
11 is that right?

12 "Answer: Pharmacyclics would sign off on the  
13 batch records. So that's the ultimate control that you have  
14 over the formulation in the manufacturing process. Without  
15 that, manufacturing would not commence.

16 "Question: Right. But as far as what decisions  
17 are made on the manufacturing side with respect to what  
18 excipients were to be used, the amounts, those types of  
19 things, Pharmatek was making those decisions. Correct?

20 "Answer: No.

21 "Question: Was it solely you that was making  
22 those decisions, Purro?

23 "Answer: It was me representing Pharmacyclics  
24 that made these decisions.

25 "Question: When you say these decisions, what

1 do you mean?

2 "Answer: Of what is going to be in the  
3 formulation.

4 "Question: Pharmatek had no involvement  
5 whatsoever in deciding what went into the formulation of the  
6 capsules; is that your testimony?

7 MS. ANDERSEN: Asked and answered.

8 THE WITNESS: We would consider their opinion.  
9 If there was an issue where, hypothetically speaking, which  
10 I guess I shouldn't do, if there was an issue with an  
11 excipient that they couldn't use in the manufacturing  
12 facility, we would obviously consider that. But other than  
13 that, no.

14 "Question: You would consider their opinion.  
15 So what were you asking Pharmatek to do?

16 "Answer: We asked them to take our formulation  
17 and make it so it can be prepared on the GMP for clinical  
18 trial use.

19 "Question: Is it your testimony today that they  
20 did not change any of the formulation that you provided to  
21 them?

22 "Answer: We had talked about the diluent, okay?  
23 So that's -- that's one thing that they did to adapt the  
24 process and agreed to that.

25 "(Exhibit 4 was marked for identification and

1 attached hereto.)

2 "Question: Mr. Purro, I've handed you what's  
3 been marked as defendants' Exhibit 4. Do you recognize this  
4 document?

5 "Answer: Yes.

6 "Question. What is this document?

7 "Answer: It's an IND Section, 3.2.P.2  
8 pharmaceutical development.

9 "Question: What does this document show?

10 "Answer: This document shows the pharmaceutical  
11 development as it was at the time of the filing of the IND.

12 "Question: Okay. If you go to page 2 of the  
13 document, there's a summary presented there under the  
14 heading 3.2.P.2 pharmaceutical development.

15 "Do you see that?

16 "Answer: Uh-huh.

17 "Question: Were you involved in preparing this  
18 submission to the FDA?

19 "Answer: Yes.

20 "Question: Okay. Were you involved in drafting  
21 the summary presented on page 2?

22 "Answer: Yes.

23 "Question: Okay. And then an additional dosage  
24 strength, the next sentence, of 140 milligrams PCI-32765 was  
25 developed and manufactured by Pharmatek beginning in

## Purro - deposition designations

1 March 2010.

2 "Do you see that?

3 "Answer: I see that.

4 "Question: Pharmatek developed the  
5 140-milligram PCI-32765 dosage strength?

6 "Answer: It is -- later in the paragraph, it's  
7 explained what they did, meaning that they adjusted the  
8 amount of microcrystalline cellulose, and we directed them  
9 to do so.

10 "Question: We'll get to the excipients in a  
11 second. I'm asking about the dosage strength.

12 This document states that Pharmatek developed  
13 the additional dosage strength at 140 milligrams, does it  
14 not?

15 "Answer: We asked them to do that. It was  
16 under our guidance and under our direction. I asked them to  
17 come up with a 140 dosage form that fit in between the 40  
18 and the 200.

19 "Question: You asked them specifically to  
20 create an additional dosage strength of 140?

21 "Answer: Yes.

22 "Question: In the last paragraph it states, the  
23 formulation process was transferred from Pharmatek to Aptuit  
24 where it was modified to allow for mechanized capsule  
25 filling.



Purro - deposition designations

1 "Do you see that?

2 "Answer: I see that.

3 "Question: Why was the formulation process  
4 transferred from Pharmatek to Aptuit?

5 "Answer: It was transferred to allow for  
6 mechanized capsule filling.

7 "Question: Why -- why did you want to allow for  
8 mechanized capsule filling?

9 "Answer: So the batch sizes could get scaled  
10 up.

11 "Question: And it states here that magnesium  
12 stearate and API-glidant was added to the formulation to  
13 improve the mechanized process.

14 "Do you see that?

15 "Answer: Uh-huh.

16 "Question: Did you come up with a concept of  
17 using a diluent to allow you to reduce the dosage of a  
18 dosage a form to a level that you would like in a set  
19 unit?

20 "Answer: In the case of ibrutinib, I came up  
21 with the idea of using a diluent to bring the formulation  
22 from a 200-milligram dose dosage strength down to a  
23 40-milligram dosage strength.

24 "Question: Okay. Were you the first one to  
25 come up with the concept of using croscarmellose sodium to

Purro - deposition designations

1     increase the disintegration rate of a capsule?

2                   "Answer: In the case of ibrutinib, I added the  
3     croscarmellose sodium to increase the disintegration rate of  
4     the ibrutinib capsule.

5                   "Question: Yeah. Sodium lauryl sulfate is a  
6     surfactant that increases PCI-32765 solubility in aqueous  
7     media, right?

8                   "Answer: I see that this is stated here, that  
9     sodium lauryl sulfate is a surfactant that increases  
10    solubility in aqueous media.

11                   "Question: And who -- who came up with the idea  
12    to use a glidant?

13                   "Answer: We did.

14                   "Question: Turn to page six of the  
15    pharmaceutical development report. In the section entitled  
16    32P-23, manufacturing process development. If you go to the  
17    third -- sorry -- fourth paragraph down at the bottom of the  
18    page, it states that, a third intermediate dosage strengths,  
19    140 milligrams was developed by Pharmatek. Do you see that?

20                   "Answer: Yes.

21                   "Question: And did you write this section,  
22    Mr. Purro?

23                   "Answer: Yes.

24                   "Question: What did you mean by, a third  
25    intermediate dosage strength, 140 milligrams was developed

1 by Pharmatek?

2 "Answer: We needed an intermediate dosage  
3 strength. And we asked Pharmatek to figure out how we can  
4 make 150-milligram dosage strength. I already mentioned  
5 that we instructed them that they can use more diluent as  
6 needed to arrive at that 140-milligram dosage strength. And  
7 it says in here again, accept that the inner diluent is  
8 used, just a final capsule.

9 "Question: This states that Pharmatek developed  
10 the dosage strength, does it not?

11 "Answer: It says nothing about having developed  
12 the formulation.

13 "Question: Sure. This is talking about the  
14 fact that Pharmatek developed a dosage strength for  
15 PCI-32765 at 140 milligrams; right?

16 "Answer: Pharmatek developed the manufacturing  
17 process via dilution.

18 "Question. Well, look, Mr. Purro, there are  
19 specific words used on this document. The sentence reads, a  
20 third intermediate dosage strength, 140 milligrams was  
21 developed by Pharmatek.

22 "Answer: Okay.

23 "Question: Okay? Do you agree with me there  
24 that's what it says?

25 "Answer: Yes, that's what it says.

Purro - deposition designations

1           "Question: Okay. And do you have any reason to  
2 doubt the accuracy of that statement that was submitted to  
3 the FDA?

4           "Answer: I'm a scientist and I wrote it as a  
5 scientist. And for me, that was a -- that is an accurate  
6 statement. And what is meant by develop is up to the  
7 interpretation.

8           "Question: Up to the FDA's interpretation or up  
9 to anyone's interpretation?

10          "Answer. Well, the word develop can be  
11 interpreted by anyone.

12          "Question: Would it have been Pharmacyclics'  
13 practice to include a statement that was ambiguous or false  
14 to the FDA in an IND submission?

15          "Answer: Excuse me?

16          "Question: Would it have been Pharmacyclics'  
17 practice to include a statement that was ambiguous or  
18 false --

19          "Answer: No.

20          "Question -- to the FDA in an IND submission?

21          "Answer: No.

22          "Question: No?

23          "Answer: No.

24          "Question: So the statement included in here,  
25 to the best of your knowledge, is accurate and true?

## Purro - deposition designations

1                   "Answer: The statement is true.

2                   "(Exhibit 6 was marked for identification and  
3 attached hereto.)

4                   "(Exhibit 7 was marked for identification and  
5 attached hereto.)

6                   "(Exhibit 8 was marked for identification and  
7 attached hereto.)

8                   "(Exhibit 9 was marked for identification and  
9 attached hereto.)

10                  "(Exhibit 10 was marked for identification and  
11 attached hereto.)

12                  "(Exhibit 11 was marked for identification and  
13 attached hereto.)

14                  "(Exhibit 12 was marked for identification and  
15 attached hereto.)

16                  "Question: Mr. Purro, the court reporter is  
17 handing you documents that have been marked 6 through 12. I  
18 will represent to you that these are the patents that you  
19 have been identified or designated by plaintiffs to testify  
20 about.

21                  Are you familiar with these documents,  
22 Mr. Purro?

23                  "Answer: I'm somewhat familiar with them.

24                  "Question: Okay. Let's start with Exhibit 9.  
25 Do you have that in front of you? If you turn to the second

1 page, Mr. Purro, what is this document?

2 "Answer: It's a United States patent.

3 "Question: And it's a United States patent  
4 9,725,455.

5 "Answer: Correct.

6 "If I refer you to this patent as the '455  
7 patent, will you understand what I'm talking about?

8 "Answer: Yes, I will.

9 "Question: All right. And on the left-hand  
10 column, there is a listing of inventors.

11 "Do you see that?

12 "Answer: I see that.

13 "Question: And it lists yourself first. It  
14 also lists a man named Mark Stephen Smyth. It lists Erick  
15 Goldman and it lists David G. Wirth:

16 "Do you see that?

17 "Answer: I see that.

18 "Question: Is it your understanding that all  
19 four of these individuals are named inventors -- strike  
20 that.

21 "Is it your understanding that all four of these  
22 individuals are inventors of the inventions claim in the  
23 '455 patent?

24 "Answer: That is my understanding.

25 "Question: Do you have any knowledge

1 independent of the fact that they are listed in -- on the  
2 face of the patent as to whether they are inventors of the  
3 inventions claimed in the '455 patent?

4 "Answer: I have worked with two of the listed  
5 inventors during my time at Pharmacyclics. I know that they  
6 were involved in the ibrutinib project.

7 "(Reporter clarification.)

8 "Answer. They were involved in the ibrutinib  
9 project, so I have no reason to doubt that they're not  
10 inventors.

11 "Question. What is your understanding of the  
12 invention of the '455 patent?

13 "Answer: There was -- there's lots of work  
14 described in here.

15 "Question: I'm asking you what your  
16 understanding is. If you have one, please tell it to me.  
17 If you don't, tell me, that, too.

18 "This patent contains part of the work that I  
19 did for Pharmacyclics. That's how I understand it. It is  
20 not spelled out in the title of it, but it's in the body of  
21 the document.

22 "Question: Let's turn to column 78 of this  
23 patent.

24 "If you go down to the bottom of the column, you  
25 see there's a line 50. It states: What is claimed is.

Purro - deposition designations

1 "Do you see that?

2 "Answer: I see that.

3 "Question: And you see under that is claim 1.

4 Do you see that?

5 "Answer: Yes, I do.

6 "Question: Claim 1 reads, a crystalline form A  
7 of -- I'm just going to say ibrutinib -- that has an X-ray  
8 powder diffraction (XRPD) pattern can comprising 2-Theta  
9 peaks at 5.7 plus or minus .1 degree, 18.9 plus or minus .1  
10 degrees and 21.3 plus or minus .1 degrees.

11 "Do you see that?

12 "Answer: Uh-huh.

13 "Question: What is your contribution to claim  
14 1?

15 "Answer: I do not write this patent.

16 "Question: That is not what I asked. What is  
17 your contribution to claim 1?

18 "Answer: What is my contribution? Is that what  
19 you're asking?

20 "Question: Yes.

21 "Answer: To claim 1? I did not contribute to  
22 claim 1.

23 "Question: Okay. Let's go to claim 2. Can you  
24 read that to yourself and let me know what your contribution  
25 to claim 2 is?



Purro - deposition designations

1                   "Answer: I did not contribute to the  
2 crystalline forms.

3                   "Question: You didn't contribute anything to  
4 the crystalline forms of ibrutinib?

5                   "Answer: I did not contribute to the  
6 crystalline forms. Okay.

7                   "Question: What did you contribute to claim 1  
8 through 30 of the '548 patent?

9                   "Answer: Again, the patent that I contributed  
10 to is listed under the Related Application Data, and I would  
11 have to further review this.

12                   "Claim 27 does mention a pharmaceutical  
13 formulation that's using the crystalline form of claim 1,  
14 which is ibrutinib and at least one pharmaceutically  
15 acceptable ingredient. I don't know exactly how to  
16 interpret that. I don't write -- I didn't write this  
17 patent. Okay.

18                   "Question: You had nothing to do with  
19 identifying crystalline forms of ibrutinib during your work  
20 on the ibrutinib project; is that correct?

21                   "Answer: I answered that. I said, no, I did  
22 not.

23                   "Question: All right. So claim 27. Any  
24 other claims that you believe you contributed to in the  
25 '548?

Purro - deposition designations

1 "Answer: I can't answer with certainty, so I  
2 don't know.

3 "Question: Can you turn to Exhibit 10. What is  
4 this document, Mr. Purro?

5 "Answer: It's a U.S. Patent 9,713,617.

6 "Question: I'll refer to this as the '617  
7 patent; is that okay?

8 "Answer: Uh-huh.

9 "Question: Again, the inventors listed here  
10 are yourself, Mark Smyth, Erick Goldman Dave Wirth;  
11 correct?

12 "Answer: Correct.

13 "Question: Was it your idea to come up with  
14 an oral administration -- or oral formulation for ibrutinib?

15 "Answer: That at some point was a company  
16 decision to develop an oral -- an oral formulation, and I  
17 came up with the oral formulation for ibrutinib. That was a  
18 directive that I received to accomplish a company goal.

19 "Question: Did you do that by yourself?

20 "Answer: Yes, I did.

21 "Question: Did you -- so nobody else  
22 contributed to the oral formulation of ibrutinib that is  
23 claimed in claim 1 ?

24 "Answer: I was responsible for the development,  
25 for formulation development, at Pharmacyclics. I was the

Purro - deposition designations

1 head of formulation development, and I developed this  
2 formulation either directly or by directing another employee  
3 to perform experimentation on behalf of the projects.

4 "Question: So what do you mean without being  
5 excessive? So too much lubricant would be -- wouldn't  
6 work?

7 "Answer: There are ranges where a lubricant  
8 would -- would -- would be excessive and you wouldn't  
9 want -- wouldn't want to use it at that level. It's --

10 "Question: What ranges would those be?

11 "Answer: That depends on the formulation.  
12 Greatly depends on --

13 "Question: If you can pull up Exhibit 6,  
14 please.

15 "Do you recognize this document, Mr. Purro?

16 "Answer: The document is a United States patent  
17 10294231.

18 "Question: So the '231 patent, if I refer to  
19 that, refer to it that way, is that okay?

20 "Answer: Yes.

21 "Question: You have not made an ibrutinib  
22 tablet formulation; correct?

23 "Answer: I have --

24 "Question: I'm sorry?

25 "Answer: I have not.

Purro - deposition designations

1 "Question. Now, how did you go about making the  
2 ibrutinib capsule formulation?

3 "Answer: I considered all the factors.

4 "Question: So there are at least two instances  
5 where you've had a capsule and tablet formulation contain  
6 the same API that you have formulated that have made it to  
7 human clinical trials, right?

8 "Answer: Right.

9 "Question: And in those two -- and in at least  
10 those two instances, the capsule formulation that you  
11 formulated, what -- strike that.

12 In at least those two instances, you formulated  
13 the capsule formulation prior to formulating the tablet  
14 formulation that contained the same API; correct?

15 "Answer: Yes.

16 "Question: Now, earlier you had mentioned that  
17 you -- when you had worked on the ibrutinib capsule  
18 formulation, you at least based your -- at least part of  
19 your research and work on the solutions and suspensions.

20 "So my question for you is, in formulating  
21 these, at least these two instances with the tablet  
22 formulations, did you at least base your research in part on  
23 the capsule formulation?

24 "You can go ahead and answer.

25 "Answer: I would take the capsule formulation

1       into consideration.

2                   "Question:   Why would you take the capsule  
3       formulation into consideration?

4                   "Answer:    Because it provides scientific data.

5                   "Question:   What scientific data does it  
6       provide?

7                   "Answer:    Most importantly, the dissolution  
8       profile.

9                   "Question:   Anything else?

10                  "Answer:    The dissolution profile.

11                  "Question:   And besides the dissolution  
12       profile, is there anything else that you would consider from  
13       the capsule formulation in formulating the tablet  
14       formulation?

15                  "Answer:    It would, at the minimum, provide  
16       compatibility data with the excipients used in the capsule  
17       formulations.

18                  "Question:   Anything else?

19                  "Answer:    No.

20                  "Question:   You mentioned that it would be under  
21       the assumption that you would want to match the dissolution  
22       profiles.

23                  "Would you ever want to match a dissolution  
24       profile when making a tablet formulation that's already been  
25       formulated as a capsule formulation?

Purro - deposition designations

1 "That's already been formulated as a capsule  
2 formulation containing the same API?

3 "Answer: Yeah, you might want to do that.

4 "Question: Why would you want to do that?

5 "Answer: You would want to do that if you want  
6 to change the format from a capsule to a tablet without it  
7 impacting the in vivo performance.

8 "Question: So when formulating a tablet  
9 formulation where there was a prior capsule formulation that  
10 contained the same API, you would consider the compatibility  
11 of the excipients in the capsule formulation with the API in  
12 formulating the tablet formulation that contained the same  
13 API; is that correct?

14 "Answer: Not correct.

15 "Question: Why is that not correct?

16 "Answer: You start from scratch. I was saying  
17 that it's nice to know if a certain excipient is compatible.  
18 Doesn't mean you want to use it. It's just nice to know.  
19 You asked me what other information would you consider. I  
20 said dissolution and then I also said -- since I have  
21 compatibility data, that would be something that I would  
22 know.

23 "Question: So you would not consider any of the  
24 excipients or the way they interact with the API in  
25 formulating the tablet formulation that was previously

1 formulated as a capsule formulation with the same API.

2 "Is that your testimony?

3 "Answer: Starting from scratch to me means I  
4 have all excipients available, even the ones that I  
5 previously used in a capsule formulation. I will not give  
6 them priority, okay?

7 "Question: Now, if you wanted to match a --  
8 the -- a tablet formulation of the capsule formulation that  
9 was previously formulated with the same API, you would  
10 consider the -- the excipients that were compatible with the  
11 API in the capsule formulation, correct?

12 "Answer: Again, I would consider all  
13 excipients.

14 "Question: And are you aware of the specific  
15 reference -- you mentioned that those are in the literature.  
16 Are you aware of those particular references, or are you  
17 just speaking generally?

18 "Answer: Speaking generally that you're aware  
19 that there's an excipient book out there and that's  
20 obviously a key reference that every formulator will go  
21 to.

22 "Question: Now, that key reference you're  
23 referring to is the Handbook of Pharmaceutical Excipients.  
24 Is that correct?

25 "Answer: Yes.

Purro - deposition designations

1 "Question: And that would have been used  
2 commonly for both capsule and tablet formulation, right?

3 "Answer: Yes.

4 "Question: You formulated the Imbruvica,  
5 ibrutinib capsule formulation, correct?

6 "Answer: Yes.

7 "Question: I'm going to refer you to  
8 Exhibit 10. Exhibit 10 is the '617 patent, correct?

9 "Answer: Exhibit 10.

10 "Question: Exhibit 10?

11 "Answer: Exhibit 10, you can refer to as the  
12 '617 patent.

13 "Question: I will direct you to column 78.

14 Looking at claim 1. Looking at that  
15 combination, how many different formulations would come  
16 within that claim?

17 "Answer: I'm sorry, how many formulations  
18 followed in that claim?

19 "Question: How many combinations would fall  
20 within that claim?

21 "Answer: Do you mean theoretically how many  
22 could fall into that claim?

23 "Question: Yes.

24 "Answer: Having four variables, you'll end up  
25 with an infinite number of combinations.



## Purro - deposition designations

1                   "Question: Would you expect all those diluents,  
2                   disintegrants, surfactants, lubricants in combination to  
3                   work in an ibrutinib formulation?

4                   "Answer: No, I would not expect any combination  
5                   of any of the listed class of excipients to act in the same  
6                   way.

7                   "Question: And why would you not expect any  
8                   combination of any listed class of excipients to act in the  
9                   same way?

10                  "Answer: All these excipients, even though they  
11                  are in different classifications, they have different  
12                  properties and they will behave different, especially in  
13                  combination with each other. If they didn't, we wouldn't be  
14                  able to formulate anything. Everything would be the same  
15                  all the time.

16                  "Question: Would you need to test the different  
17                  combinations?

18                  "Answer: Of course.

19                  "Question: So my follow-up question is, when  
20                  you say of course you need to test the different  
21                  combinations, what kinds of tests would you need to perform?

22                  "Answer: Dissolution, disintegration,  
23                  stability.

24                  "Question: Any other tests?

25                  "Answer: That would be the focus, right. There

Purro - deposition designations

1 might be other tests, but that would be the most important  
2 test that I would conduct.

3 "Question: What would be some not as important  
4 tests?

5 "Answer: Water content.

6 "Question: And when you say water content, what  
7 does that mean?

8 "Answer: That means you measure how much water  
9 is in -- in a capsule, and if that changes over time.

10 "Question: Any other tests?

11 "Answer: There's many others. I gave you some  
12 examples of the ones that are more relevant to the -- to the  
13 testing.

14 "Question: When you say relevant to the  
15 testing, do you mean relevant to the ibrutinib formulation?

16 "Answer: No. Relevant to how you would  
17 evaluate the pharmaceutical formulation in general, which  
18 also would include the ibrutinib formulation. But these  
19 were general terms of what I would test for.

20 "Question: I'd direct your attention to  
21 Exhibit 12. And what is Exhibit 12?

22 "Answer: It's a United States Patent  
23 10,294,232.

24 "Question: Okay if I refer to it as the '232  
25 patent?

Purro - deposition designations

1 "Answer: Yes.

2 "Question: I'm going to direct you to column  
3 78.

4 "Looking at claim 1 at the bottom of column  
5 78 --

6 "Answer: Uh-huh.

7 "Question: -- how many different formulation  
8 combinations would fall within claim 1?

9 "Answer: I mean I can't really put a limit on  
10 it, okay? It could be -- it could be hundreds of different  
11 combinations under these conditions. Just by the fact that  
12 it's one or more disintegrating agent right there, that  
13 gives me hundreds of combinations.

14 "Question: Sure. How would you go -- how would  
15 you go about determining whether each specific combination  
16 of diluent, disintegrant, surfactant, lubricant works in the  
17 ibrutinib formulation listed here in claim 1?

18 "Answer: Okay. Besides testing each and every  
19 combination that you propose, there is a methodology that's  
20 called designing experiments, where you could design an  
21 experiment that would give you a little broader range when  
22 you don't have to test each individual one. That's kind of  
23 a complicated approach, but regardless, to answer your  
24 questions, you would have to experimentally test a lot of  
25 formulations within that range.

Purro - deposition designations

1 "Question: Okay. I'd like to mark this as  
2 Exhibit 19.

3 "(Exhibit 19 was marked for identification and  
4 attached hereto.)

5 "Question: It's a document entitled 3.2.P.2.2,  
6 drug product formulation development. And it is Bates  
7 numbered IMBPCY00150028 to IMBPCY00150338.

8 "Have you seen Exhibit 19 before, Mr. Purro?

9 "Answer: Yes, I have.

10 "Question: And what is it?

11 "Answer: This is the formulation development  
12 section of the NDA.

13 "Question: Does this exhibit describe, in part,  
14 a number of ibrutinib formulations that you developed?

15 "Answer: Yes, it does.

16 "Question: You developed a number of capsule  
17 formulations for ibrutinib, correct?

18 "Answer: Yes.

19 "Question: And you developed a number of  
20 solution and suspension formulations for ibrutinib, correct?

21 "Answer: Yes.

22 "Question: I'd like to turn to Table 3 in  
23 Exhibit 19.

24 "Answer: Uh-huh.

25 "Question: What information is contained in

Purro - deposition designations

1     this table?

2                   "Answer:  These are formulation component and  
3     compositions that were used in Phase 1 and 2 clinical trials  
4     by Pharmacyclics.  They were prepared by Pharmatek.  They  
5     prepared the clinical trial materials for us.

6                   "Question:  And these are formulations, capsule  
7     formulations, that you developed?

8                   "Answer:  That is correct.

9                   "Question:  And in the formulations listed in  
10    Table 3, you tried different amounts of microcrystalline  
11    cellulose.  Do you see that?

12                   "Answer:  Yes.

13                   "Question:  You tried different amounts of  
14    croscarmellose sodium?  Is that right?

15                   "Answer:  They are different amounts, but the  
16    percentage is -- is the same.

17                   "Question:  And you tried different amounts and  
18    percentages of sodium lauryl sulfate; is that right?

19                   "Answer:  Yes.

20                   "Question:  And you tried different percentages  
21    of the active ingredient; is that right?

22                   "Answer:  That's correct.

23                   "Question:  Sure.  Did you know without testing  
24    the amounts of magnesium stearate with the combination of  
25    the other excipients whether or not it was -- would be

1       successful as an excipient in the formulation that you  
2       ultimately chose?

3               "Answer: We did not know that. We had to try  
4       it out. We did have formulations here that contain a higher  
5       amount of magnesium stearate. So it was a fairly safe  
6       assumption that a lower amount would not affect the  
7       performance of the formulation.

8               "Question: So you had to conduct experiments in  
9       order to know which range of magnesium stearate would be  
10      appropriate in the ultimate formulation?

11              "Answer: Yes."

12              (End of videotaped deposition.)

13              THE COURT: All right.

14              MS. CLAYTON: Your Honor, I believe Alvogen  
15      intends to call its witness.

16              THE COURT: Okay. Great.

17              MR. HANNA: Dr. Fassihi, can you hear us?

18              MR. SIPES: I'm sorry, Your Honor. We're ready  
19      to proceed.

20              THE COURT: Sorry. I was on mute. I didn't  
21      realize it. Yes, you should go ahead. Sorry.

22              ...DR. REZA FASSIHI, having been duly  
23      sworn/affirmed as a witness, was examined and testified as  
24      follows ...

25      BY MR. HANNA:

1 Q. Welcome back, Dr. Fassihi.

2 A. Thank you.

3 Q. I understand you created a set of demonstrative  
4 exhibits?

5 A. Yes, I did.

6 Q. How did you create those demonstrative exhibits? Can  
7 you hear us, Dr. Fassihi?

8 A. Yes, yes.

9 Q. Okay. How did you create those demonstrative  
10 exhibits?

11 A. I created them after consulting with Alvogen's  
12 counsel.

13 Q. Now, a few days ago, you discussed Alvogen's tablets.  
14 Are there any drawbacks to formulating API in a capsule  
15 dosage form?

16 A. Yes. There are a number of drawbacks.

17 Q. And what are they?

18 A. I have listed them in my slides. So capsules  
19 basically have a limited volume to contain the active  
20 ingredient and excipients. It can pick up moisture and  
21 release moisture into the formulation, which makes it  
22 unstable. Capsules are too large to be swallowed by  
23 patients and it interferes with compliance.

24 Q. What happens if the required amount of API exceeds the  
25 fixed volume of the capsule?

1 A. Well, in that case, they just have to increase the  
2 number of capsules the patient has to take.

3 Q. Now, how would formulating the API into a tablet  
4 dosage form address that problem?

5 A. Well, tablets are basically a very advanced  
6 consolidated powder. Therefore, you can put much larger  
7 amount of API together with excipients. It makes advanced  
8 tablets that account for a much larger goal.

9 Q. If the amount of API in a capsule were a concern for a  
10 pharmaceutical company, why not manufacture a bigger  
11 capsule?

12 A. Well, the capsule sizes are such that typically, I  
13 think you have all taken Amoxicillin capsules, for example,  
14 and that is the size number one or size number zero. That  
15 is our limit. If it is anything larger than that, patient  
16 cannot swallow. So that is the limitation.

17 Q. Now, if the amount of API in a capsule were concerning  
18 to a pharmaceutical company, why not ask the patient to take  
19 more capsules?

20 A. I think what has happened, when it's large, often  
21 patients have to take four or five capsules per day and that  
22 is very inconvenient.

23 Q. What is the most common route of administration for  
24 pharmaceutical formulations?

25 A. It's oral route of administration.



1 Q. And what is the BCS system?

2 A. The BCS is, BCS stands for Biopharmaceutics  
3 Classification system. It is a system developed by FDA to  
4 basically define in terms of solubility and permeability.

5 Q. How is ibrutinib characterized according to the BCS in  
6 terms of its solubilities and permeability?

7 A. It has been designated BCS Class II, which is low  
8 solubility, high permeability.

9 Q. What types of excipient are used in tablet  
10 formulations?

11 A. I have a demonstrative that I have that appears on the  
12 slide. Generally, what you need to make a tablet, you need  
13 fillers, disintegrant, binders, glidants, lubricants and  
14 surfactants.

15 Q. Now, why are fillers or diluents used in tablet  
16 formulation?

17 A. Well, the tablets, they, they should be compressed and  
18 therefore come to a stability consolidation is something  
19 that depends on the characteristics of the fillers. That's  
20 what they use here.

21 Q. And what is the most common filler used in tablets?

22 A. Currently, I think lactose and also microcrystalline  
23 cellulose. Those are the main, main ones.

24 Q. Why are disintegrants used in tablet formulation?

25 A. Well, tablets are compressed in the tableting machine

1 as maybe thousands of kilogram host, so they are very strong  
2 and damp and they need to be -- break apart once they come  
3 in contact with water. So we need disintegrant to break it  
4 up.

5 Q. And what is an example of a commonly used  
6 disintegrant?

7 A. The most common one is, for example, croscarmellose  
8 sodium.

9 Q. Why are binders used in tablet formulations?

10 A. Once again, because tablets, they need the thread and  
11 binders contribute to that function, that property of the  
12 tablet to provide strands and therefore we need to use  
13 binders.

14 Q. What is an example of a commonly used binder?

15 A. Again, most commonly used is polyvinylpyrrolidone.

16 Q. Why are glidants used in tablet formulation?

17 A. The tableting process is very fast. In tablet making  
18 pharmaceutical companies, they provide 5 -- 6,000 tablets  
19 per minute. That means the powder, which is blended  
20 together as a formulation, has to flow into the machine.  
21 For that reason, glidants are used and they help flow a  
22 powder into the machine.

23 Q. What is the most commonly used glidant?

24 A. It is colloidal silicon dioxide, which is extensively  
25 used.

1 Q. Why are lubricants used in tablet formulations?

2 A. Lubricants are used again because the compression  
3 requires a lot of work. So the consolidated tablet, it  
4 stays in the machine and has to be ejected.

5 So lubricants are added to help ejection of  
6 tablets from the machine so that the --

7 Q. Are lubricants commonly included in tablet  
8 formulation?

9 A. Yes.

10 Q. Now, what is the most commonly used lubricant?

11 A. Magnesium stearate is the one that is extensively  
12 used.

13 Q. Why are surfactants used in tablet formulations?

14 A. Often the formulation that, for example, use magnesium  
15 stearate, if there's low solubility, magnesium stearate is  
16 very hydrophobic. So manufacturing formulators, they add a  
17 hydrophilic surfactant to basically create a balance in  
18 there.

19 Q. What is a commonly used surfactant?

20 A. The most commonly used is sodium lauryl sulfate.

21 Q. Is it common for a formulator to formulate a tablet  
22 with the same inactive excipient used in a prior capsule  
23 formulation containing the same API?

24 A. Of course. If there already is a product which is  
25 approved by FDA and on the market such as, for example, in

1 this case, as a capsule, that will be our starting point,  
2 that we use the capsule. Water is used there. We try a few  
3 times to see if it can be comparable. If it cannot be  
4 comparable, then we look for other resources such as  
5 excipients and published information to basically to  
6 experiment, routine experimentation to come up with a tablet  
7 formulation.

8 Q. And why is it common to include the same excipients  
9 in tablet formulation previously used in a capsule  
10 formulation?

11 A. Well, it is from a regulatory point of view, a  
12 laborious process, and if something is already there, the  
13 approach is to use those that are FDA approved. The FDA is  
14 very confident with that and you need to play around with an  
15 another two or three to build your tablets.

16 Q. Are there any commercially available ibrutinib  
17 products in the U.S.?

18 A. Yes.

19 Q. What are they?

20 A. There are two products on the market, Imbruvica  
21 capsule and Imbruvica tablets.

22 Q. And when did FDA approve Imbruvica capsules?

23 A. As I have shown on my slide, the capsule was approved  
24 in 2013.

25 Q. Is DTX-1413 the Imbruvica 2013 label?

1 A. Yes, that's correct.

2 Q. And when did it publish?

3 A. That was published in November 2013.

4 Q. What indications did FDA approve Imbruvica capsules  
5 for in 2013?

6 A. The indication for Imbruvica is for treatment of  
7 mantle cell lymphoma.

8 Q. And what is the recommended dose for treating MCL  
9 according to the level?

10 A. The label indicates 560 milligrams to be taken orally  
11 once a day.

12 Q. Are you aware of any changes to the recommended dose  
13 for the indication for Imbruvica capsules?

14 A. No changes.

15 Q. In 2013, how much ibrutinib was formulated into each  
16 Imbruvica capsule?

17 A. Again, as the label shows, each capsule contains  
18 140 milligrams, so in order to come up with a dose of 560,  
19 which is essential for treatment, as they have said, patient  
20 has to take four capsules and, of course, compliance with  
21 that number of doses that one has to take is just literally  
22 too much.

23 Q. Do Imbruvica capsules contain any inactive excipients?

24 A. Yes, it does.

25 Q. And what are they?

Fassihi - direct

1 A. I have looked at the label again and they describe  
2 croscarmellose sodium, magnesium stearate, microcrystalline  
3 cellulose and sodium lauryl sulfate. Yes.

4 Q. Did FDA approve those excipients in combination with  
5 ibrutinib as of 2013?

6 A. Yes.

7 Q. And, Dr. Fassihi, can you please provide a summary of  
8 your opinions in this case?

9 A. My opinion, I have looked at the '857 patent and I've  
10 read the claim 30 and 37 of '857. And based on what I have  
11 looked at and I've read the literature, the claims are  
12 invalid and obvious and also for lack of written  
13 description.

14 Q. And is there a particular date that you applied for  
15 priority in terms of the prior art?

16 A. Yes. The priority date for '857 was March 10th,  
17 March 3, 2015.

18 Q. Please turn to JTX-0049.

19 Dr. Fassihi, what is JTX-0049?

20 A. This is the represented patent, '857.

21 Q. And if you continue on. Did you review the  
22 prosecution history in connection with the '857 patent?

23 A. Yes, I did.

24 Q. And why did you review the prosecution history?

25 A. Just I wanted to understand the, you know, the claims

Fassihi - direct

1 and I went back there. I looked at prosecution history.

2 Q. And is JTX-0049 the prosecution history that you  
3 reviewed?

4 A. Yes, it is.

5 Q. Dr. Fassihi, were FDA approved solid oral dosage  
6 formulations of ibrutinib publicly available prior to  
7 March 3rd, 2015?

8 A. I'm sorry. Can you repeat the question?

9 Q. Yes. Were FDA approved solid oral dosage formulations  
10 of ibrutinib publicly available prior to March 3rd, 2015?

11 A. Of course. The Imbruvica capsule was on the market as  
12 of 2013, yes.

13 Q. Does the Imbruvica 2013 label identify the amount of  
14 ibrutinib in Imbruvica capsules?

15 A. Yes, it does.

16 Q. And does it identify -- is that the 140 mgs that we  
17 looked at previously?

18 A. That's correct.

19 Q. Does the Imbruvica 2013 label identify the amount of  
20 ingredients in the Imbruvica capsule?

21 A. Not amount of ingredient, no.

22 Q. Was there any prior art that described an Imbruvica  
23 capsule formulation having the same API and excipients as an  
24 Imbruvica capsule?

25 A. Yes. There was a publication '172 patent, which also

1 was from Pharmacyclics, which was published in 2013.

2 Q. And is that DTX-1399?

3 A. That's correct.

4 Q. Where in the '172 publication does it describe an  
5 Imbruvica capsule formulation having the same API and  
6 excipient as an Imbruvica capsule?

7 A. So if you -- here in the Table 5, and I'm looking at  
8 third column in there, which shows 140 milligrams, and it  
9 lists everything which is in the capsule. It does say  
10 capsule formulation on the top of the table.

11 Q. And --

12 A. So column 3 describes the crystalline compound 1,  
13 which is ibrutinib. It describes microcrystalline  
14 cellulose, croscarmellose, sodium lauryl sulfate and  
15 magnesium stearate.

16 Q. Did the '172 publication only disclose ibrutinib  
17 capsule formulations?

18 A. No. It also disclosed a tablet formulation.

19 Q. And where in the '172 publication did it disclose a  
20 tablet formulation?

21 A. As I have shown on the slide, it is Example 11, Table  
22 6, and it -- right below this example, immediate release  
23 tablet. The list of ingredients are there as well as the  
24 range, percentage range of each.

25 So, for example, if you have crystalline



Fassihi - direct

1 compound 1, which is a five percent ibrutinib, you have  
2 hypromellose, lactose, magnesium stearate, and a percentage  
3 range.

4 Q. Now, what is hypromellose?

5 A. Hypromellose is a binder that was added.

6 Q. Dr. Fassihi, besides the '172 publication, were there  
7 any other publications that described ibrutinib tablet  
8 formulations prior to March 3rd, 2015?

9 A. Yes. In the publication of Goldstein in 2014, which  
10 is a different slide. That was published, also describes a  
11 tablet formulation of ibrutinib.

12 Q. And when you refer to the Goldstein reference, you're  
13 referring to WO 2014/004707?

14 A. That's correct.

15 Q. And that's DTX-985?

16 A. Yes.

17 Q. How many tablet formulations are disclosed in  
18 Goldstein 2014?

19 A. I believe there are three examples there that relate  
20 to solid dosage form.

21 Q. With respect to tablets?

22 A. Yes.

23 Q. Now, what ingredients are included? Does Goldstein  
24 2014 describe any immediate release tablet formulation of  
25 ibrutinib?

1 A. Yes. Both Example 2 and Example 3. Let's look at  
2 Example 2. It says right on the top, ibrutinib and/or  
3 pharmaceutically acceptable salt in non-enteric delayed time  
4 released tablet press. So it measures that.

5 And in the first paragraph starting at to make  
6 immediate release tablets of ibrutinib, and then they  
7 describe all the limits and how to proceed. And they  
8 eventually make, get to the point for the end of the  
9 paragraph, the powders are blended. Powder blend is then  
10 tableted using conventional tablet. That is how the tablets  
11 are made.

12 Q. Now, what ingredients are included in the immediate  
13 release tablets disclosed in Goldstein 2014?

14 A. Well, it describes, these are in yellow highlight  
15 ibrutinib. Then there is microcrystalline, lactose, those  
16 two together. There's a starch. Further, the sodium starch  
17 glycolate, magnesium stearate and silicon dioxide.

18 Q. Now, what is starch?

19 A. Starch is the diluent and the binder that is used.

20 Q. And what is sodium starch glycolate?

21 A. That is a disintegrant.

22 Q. Does Goldstein 2014 disclose the amounts of the  
23 ingredients in its immediate release tablets?

24 A. Yes. In Example 2, which is on the right-hand side of  
25 this description, this is a description of the, all of those

1 ingredients in kilogram amount.

2 Q. Now, would a POSA have understood how to convert the  
3 kilogram amount to weight-by-weight percentage?

4 A. Sure. Yes. That's what I've done on the third  
5 column. That is my calculation that I've provided. So  
6 those are exact percentages of those kilogram quantities.

7 Q. And so what were the weight percentages of each  
8 ingredient in Goldstein's 2014 immediate release tablet?

9 A. Ibrutinib was 80.9 percent. Microcrystalline  
10 cellulose with lactose together, 8.1 percent. The starch,  
11 7.3 percent. Sodium starch glycolate, 3.2. Magnesium  
12 stearate, 0.3 percent. Silicon dioxide. 0.2 percent.

13 Q. And you said 80.9 percent. Is that with respect to  
14 ibrutinib?

15 A. Yes.

16 THE COURT: Stop for one second. Go ahead.

17 Q. Is Goldstein's 2014 immediate release tablet a high  
18 load solid tablet formulation of ibrutinib?

19 A. Yes, it is.

20 Q. And why is it a high load solid tablet formulation?

21 A. Well, you know, the tablets that contain 50 to  
22 90 percent of the API are considered a high load  
23 formulation.

24 Q. And --

25 A. Tablet. Yes.

1 Q. And why do you believe that the solid tablet  
2 formulations, immediate release tablet formulation is a high  
3 load tablet formulation?

4 A. Well, this one has 80.9 percent, so that is very high.  
5 I said between 50 and 90 percent is considered a high load  
6 formulation.

7 Q. You mentioned that Goldstein 2014 disclosed other  
8 tablet formulations. Can you please describe those?

9 A. Yes. Example 3 is another one, and it also describes  
10 more or less the same components, I believe. It is an  
11 immediate release tablet using the same ingredients and it  
12 has different, different amounts.

13 Q. What was the weight percentage of ibrutinib in the  
14 coated tablet disclosed in Example 3 of Goldstein?

15 A. So these are the kilogram quantities of Example 3 and  
16 I did the calculation and the ibrutinib contents of this  
17 formulation was 60.98 percent.

18 Q. And how did you determine that?

19 A. Well, the kilogram quantity is there and the total of  
20 immediate release, the total is 12.38 because the remainder  
21 is the coating. So we are looking at the tablet, the tablet  
22 itself before coating dissolved. So it's 4.36 kilograms,  
23 and we have each of them in kilograms which we can easily  
24 calculate. And based on that, 60.98 is the amount of  
25 ibrutinib in that.

1 Q. Does Goldstein 2014 require that the tablet  
2 formulations described in Example 2 and three include a  
3 delayed release or modified release coating?

4 A. That is not a requirement, no.

5 Q. How do you know that?

6 A. Well, because it describes, you know, in Example 3, it  
7 says it is an immediate release right at the beginning. As  
8 in Example 2 to make immediate release tablets, and it goes  
9 on to describe it. And you make your immediate release  
10 tablets. And then, further, if you want to coat it, then  
11 you may or may not.

12 Q. Does Goldstein 2014 identify the immediate release  
13 tablet that you identified earlier as an intermediate?

14 A. No.

15 Q. Before March 3rd, 2015, how would a POSA know whether  
16 a particular excipient was considered to be safe and  
17 effective in humans?

18 A. Well, the Handbook of Pharmaceutical Excipients is a  
19 compendium that every, you know, POSA would look at the  
20 FDA's added list. Excipients that are regarded as safe.

21 Q. And is DTX-1625 the Handbook of Pharmaceutical  
22 Excipients.

23 A. That's correct.

24 Q. And what is generally in the Handbook of  
25 Pharmaceutical Excipients?

1 A. In the Handbook of Pharmaceutical Excipients, each of  
2 the excipients has a description in terms of physical  
3 properties, moisture content, so they give a full  
4 description of each of the excipients in there so that we  
5 can look and identify what we wanted.

6 Q. And when did the Handbook of Pharmaceutical Excipients  
7 publish, the version that you relied on?

8 A. This is the third edition, which was published in  
9 2000, but it was available before that.

10 Q. Does the Handbook of Pharmaceutical Excipients  
11 describe individually all the excipients in claim 30 and 37  
12 of the '857 patent?

13 A. Yes, it does.

14 Q. And does the Handbook of Pharmaceutical Excipients  
15 include recommended amounts for the excipients in claims 30  
16 and 37 of the '857 patent?

17 A. Yes, it does.

18 Q. Prior to March 3rd, 2015, would a POSA have been  
19 motivated to develop a high load solid tablet formulation of  
20 ibrutinib?

21 A. Yes.

22 Q. And why is that?

23 A. Well, because, you know, it is well established within  
24 the pharmaceutical industry that you have capsules and you  
25 always go ahead and make tablets. Especially in this case,

Fassihi - direct

1 because as I described earlier, patients have to take four  
2 capsules each of 140 in order to have 560-milligram dose,  
3 which is necessary for the treatment.

4 So in a situation like that, of course, a POSA  
5 would be motivated to make a tablet which would have just  
6 single dose, single tablet with other doses.

7 Q. So would a POSA be motivated to develop tablet dosage  
8 units contain more than 140 milligrams?

9 A. Yes.

10 Q. And why is that?

11 A. Because, you know, so to help patients for improving  
12 patient compliance and also making tablets is easier,  
13 cheaper and faster.

14 Q. Now, if a POSA thought to make a high load solid  
15 tablet formulation of ibrutinib prior to March 3rd, 2015,  
16 where would he begin?

17 A. Well, the starting point would be what is already out  
18 there, so they would look at the capsule and they try to  
19 compress it. If it doesn't compress, they start adding one  
20 or two excipients which are known to have compressability  
21 and that is how they start.

22 They also look at what is available, what other  
23 sources of literature are there. They would also look at  
24 that. It is a routine experimentation.

25 Q. And what do you mean by routine experimentation?

1 A. Routine experimentation is just that you have your  
2 capsules, you have your active drug and already excipients  
3 which are accepted by FDA. They are compatible. There is  
4 no issue there.

5 So you start modifying the dose to see if you  
6 can continue making the tablet. You can also look at the  
7 literature. Prior to 2015, there's other literature like  
8 '172, like 2014, they already have described tablet  
9 formulations. You use those information and you proceed and  
10 you make your tablet.

11 Q. Now, when you said 2014, were you referring to  
12 Goldstein 2014?

13 A. That's correct.

14 Q. Earlier you had discussed glidants. Would a POSA have  
15 been motivated to use a glidant in consideration with a  
16 formulation containing ibrutinib and the four excipients  
17 disclosed in the Imbruvica capsules?

18 A. For the reasons that I mentioned, when we make  
19 tablets, the speed of tablet production is high, so every  
20 POSA would know that powder has to flow well and uniform.  
21 So a well-known glidant.

22 Q. Now, are powder flowability issues a concern for  
23 capsules?

24 A. Not really, because capsule production is very small  
25 and they don't need to be compared. So it's not the major



1 issue.

2 Q. Now, earlier you mentioned colloidal silicon dioxide  
3 is commonly used as a glidant.

4 Was colloidal silicon dioxide used in an  
5 Imbruvica tablet formulation before March 3rd, 2013?

6 A. Yes.

7 Q. Where is it used?

8 A. In Goldstein 2014. If you look at the Examples 2 and  
9 3, in both of those colloidal silicon dioxide is one of the  
10 excipients which is used.

11 Q. Earlier you mentioned that microcrystalline cellulose  
12 as a filler that was used in Imbruvica capsules. Would a  
13 POSA have been motivated to only use microcrystalline  
14 cellulose as a filler in an Imbruvica tablet formulation?

15 A. Well, they would use that, but because tablets have to  
16 be consolidated, a POSA knows that consolidation and  
17 compaction is a necessity to make tablets, so they would  
18 look at other fillers which demonstrate good compatibility.  
19 Typically, that is lactose.

20 Q. Now, why would a POSA include lactose in his ibrutinib  
21 tablet formulation?

22 A. Similarly because to facilitate processing,  
23 compactability and make the formulation.

24 Q. Was there any literature that identified lactose in  
25 combination with microcrystalline cellulose in that

1     ibrutinib tablet formulation?

2     A.     Yes.   Goldstein 2014, Example 2 and 3.   Both of them,  
3     they used microcrystalline cellulose and lactose.

4     Q.     Any others?

5     A.     I believe also in '172 publication, it is also in the  
6     examples here.

7     Q.     And why would it have been obvious to select lactose  
8     instead of some other filler or use in combination with  
9     microcrystalline in an ibrutinib tablet formulation?

10    A.     Well, the '172 publication is a Pharmacyclics  
11    publication.   Goldstein also uses lactose.   So these are the  
12    ones that they have usually have seen no issue with that, so  
13    they -- you know, that's why the POSA would consider lactose  
14    as desirable excipient to be added.

15    Q.     Would a POSA have been motivated to use a particular  
16    form of lactose in making an ibrutinib tablet formulation?

17    A.     Lactose monohydrate is known to be highly compressible  
18    and this information is actually in the Handbook of  
19    Pharmaceutical Excipients that describes that.   So, yes,  
20    lactose monohydrate would be the ideal one.

21    Q.     In addition to colloidal silicon dioxide and lactose,  
22    would a POSA be motivated to include any other excipients in  
23    a tablet formulation containing the four previously  
24    discussed excipients in Imbruvica capsules?

25    A.     So as I mentioned, because tablets need to be bound

1 together, a strong binder would have been considered.

2 Q. Why would a POSA have been motivate to use a binder in  
3 an ibrutinib tablet formulation?

4 A. As I mentioned, you know, you wants to use your binder  
5 maybe to granulate, but at the same time, you provide a  
6 thread to the tablet formation and tablets are to be hard  
7 and consolidated, so binders are used.

8 Q. Would a POSA have used hypromellose or starch in an  
9 ibrutinib tablet formulation?

10 A. I mean, in the examples, they were used, but a POSA  
11 would also know that these are sources that is supplied and  
12 there's always impurities in there. For example, a starch:  
13 Rice, potato, tomato sauce, and so on. So they would rather  
14 go for a superior binder.

15 Q. And what kind of binder would they consider then  
16 instead?

17 A. They would consider, for example, a synthetic one,  
18 which would be like polyvinylpyrrolidone.

19 Q. And why would a POSA prefer to use a synthetic binder  
20 in an Imbruvica tablet formulation?

21 A. Well, it's more reliable. You know, the suppliers are  
22 consistently providing the same quality.

23 Q. Is PVP a commonly used -- when I say PVP, you  
24 understand I'm referring to polyvinylpyrrolidone?

25 A. Yes.

1 Q. Is PVP a commonly used binder in tablet formulation?

2 A. Yes, it is extensive use.

3 Q. Did any literature prior to March 3rd, 2015, identify  
4 PVP as a binder that is compatible with ibrutinib in an  
5 ibrutinib tablet formulation?

6 A. Well, prior to that, yes, because polyvinylpyrrolidone  
7 was used. And so what was the question exactly?

8 Q. Sure. Did any literature prior to March 3rd, 2015,  
9 identify a PVP as a binder that was compatible with  
10 ibrutinib in an ibrutinib tablet formulation?

11 A. Yes. I think the Pharmaceutical Handbook has that and  
12 also the published literature.

13 Q. And which published literature?

14 A. I believe it was in 2014.

15 Q. Goldstein 2014.

16 A. Yes, as well.

17 Q. Any other literature?

18 A. I believe the '172 also had it. I think I've seen it  
19 there as well.

20 Q. Having selected ingredients for use in an ibrutinib  
21 tablet formulation, what would a POSA do next?

22 A. Well, once the excipients are selected, then the POSA  
23 would proceed with manufacture.

24 Q. And how -- once you have the selection of excipients,  
25 how would you determine the amounts of excipients to use in

1 a tablet formulation?

2 A. Well, they would look back again at percentages that  
3 are used in the, both in '172 and in Goldstein 2014 and all  
4 the ranges that are provided in the Pharmaceutical Handbook  
5 and accordingly determine what percentage they should take  
6 and move forward.

7 Q. So would a POSA have any guidance with respect to the  
8 amount of lactose monohydrate to include an ibrutinib tablet  
9 formulation?

10 A. The Example 11 of the '172 publication, we can see  
11 Table 6, that they have used microcrystalline cellulose, and  
12 the range is 5 to 50 percent. Lactose, 10 to 75 percent.  
13 So those are the two ranges, and, of course, within those  
14 ranges, you can pick one that helps you develop your  
15 formulation.

16 Q. And that's DTX-1399?

17 A. That's correct.

18 Q. Would a POSA have any guidance with respect to the  
19 amount of microcrystalline cellulose to includes an  
20 ibrutinib formulation?

21 A. Yes.

22 Q. And --

23 A. So the range is 5 to 50 percent.

24 Q. And where was that disclosed in the art?

25 A. Again, in Example 11, the formulation and components

1 are there and in the range on the table indicates 5 percent  
2 to 50 percent for microcrystalline cellulose.

3 Q. Would a POSA have any guidance with respect to the  
4 amount of croscarmellose sodium to include an ibrutinib  
5 tablet formulation?

6 A. Again, Example 11 would provide 0 to 15 percent for  
7 croscarmellose sodium.

8 Q. Would a POSA have any guidance with respect to the  
9 amount of magnesium stearate is included in an ibrutinib  
10 tablet formulation?

11 A. Yes. In same Example 11, the magnesium is in the  
12 range of .25 percent to 2.5 percent.

13 Q. Would a POSA have any guidance with respect to the  
14 amount of colloidal silicon dioxide to include in the tablet  
15 formulation?

16 A. Yes. This is a slide from the copies of excerpt from  
17 Pharmaceutical Handbook. The first one is colloidal silicon  
18 dioxide. It mentions in the table .1 to .5 percent is the  
19 range.

20 Q. And that is DTX-1625?

21 A. That's correct.

22 Q. Would a POSA have any guidance with respect to the  
23 amount of polyvinylpyrrolidone to include in its ibrutinib  
24 tablet formulation?

25 A. Yes. Again, polyvinylpyrrolidone is mentioned there.

1 This is just excerpt from there and it describes the binder  
2 for the lower part of the table, .5 to 5 percent would be  
3 amount of binder that can be used.

4 Q. Would a POSA have any guidance with respect to the  
5 amount of sodium lauryl sulfate to include in an ibrutinib  
6 tablet formulation?

7 A. Yes. Again, excerpt from the Pharmaceutical Handbook.  
8 It describes ranges for sodium lauryl sulfate. So if you  
9 want to use it to help solubilization, one to two percent is  
10 mentioned.

11 Q. Now, as of March 3rd, 2015, would a POSA have been  
12 motivated to use a particular dose amount of ibrutinib in  
13 the ibrutinib tablet formulation?

14 A. Sure. I think --

15 Q. What would that be?

16 A. The 560, as I mentioned earlier. That -- the point of  
17 movement, because you have a capsule and you want to create  
18 a high load formulation, 560, so that is what we used.

19 Q. And is 560 mgs disclosed in the prior art?

20 A. Yes.

21 Q. And what prior art is that?

22 A. Well, Imbruvica capsules, it's required for a patient  
23 to be taking once a day.

24 Q. Now, prior to March 3rd, 2015, would a POSA have a  
25 motivation to combine Imbruvica's 2013 label with a '172

1 publication, Goldstein 2014, and the Handbook of  
2 Pharmaceutical Excipients?

3 A. Sure. That is a very obvious approach, yes.

4 Q. And why is that?

5 A. Well, because you are looking at prior art, what is  
6 available, and so you look at what is approved by FDA, such  
7 as Imbruvica capsules. Then you want to make tablets, so  
8 you do your own routine experimentation and if you need more  
9 information, you look at publications such as '172, which  
10 describes the tablets, Goldstein, which describes the  
11 tablets and also Pharmaceutical Handbook, which is  
12 well-known and routinely used for selection of excipients.

13 Q. And which of those references relates to the Imbruvica  
14 formulation?

15 A. Imbruvica 2013. That is the label we talked about  
16 earlier.

17 Q. Any others?

18 A. Also the 172 publication describes the tablet of  
19 Imbruvica. So does Goldstein 2014. Ultimately, they have,  
20 they have the active ingredient in them.

21 Q. Well, prior to March 3rd, 2015, would a POSA have had  
22 a reasonable expectation of success in making a high load  
23 solid tablet formulation?

24 A. Yes, they would have had that expectation, yes.

25 Q. And why is that?



Fassihi - direct

1 A. Well, because already capsules were available and  
2 approved by FDA. Pharmacyclics, you know, they used  
3 excipients that they published in the '172 and all the prior  
4 art, which are described shows that they are all easy to  
5 use. There is no issue. So, yes, expectations would have  
6 been successful.

7 Q. Was Pharmacyclics the only pharmaceutical company to  
8 develop an ibrutinib tablet?

9 A. No. It was also I believe the Goldstein bio, bio  
10 pharma, I forget the name, but they also described it,  
11 described the tablet, yes.

12 Q. I think you're referring to Principia Biopharma?

13 A. That's correct. Thank you.

14 Q. And would a POSA have a reasonable expectation of  
15 success in making a high load solid tablet formulation  
16 containing the claimed ingredient at the claimed amounts?

17 A. Yes.

18 Q. And why is that?

19 A. Well, because the high load formulation was already  
20 disclosed in the, as I showed you in the earlier, about  
21 80 percent in one formulation of Goldstein, and also in the  
22 other formation in '172, so it was all there. Components  
23 were there. And, yes, a POSA would have been able to  
24 deliver the formulation and good expectation of success.

25 Q. Now, let's shift gears a little bit. What is a

1     Maillard reaction?

2     A.     A Maillard reaction is basically reducing a sugar, one  
3     of them being lactose. When they come in contact with a  
4     strong amine and different conditions, such as high  
5     temperature and pH, they might react. So that is Maillard  
6     reaction.

7     Q.     Is ibrutinib an amine containing compound?

8     A.     It has an amino group, but it is a very weak amino  
9     group. So nothing has been said about its potential and  
10    compatibility because already the Pharmacyclics publication,  
11    they used lactose. Goldstein used lactose and there was no  
12    issue.

13    Q.     So a POSA would not have any concerns with combining  
14    that ibrutinib with lactose and making an ibrutinib tablet  
15    formulation?

16    A.     No, because it doesn't react like lactose.

17    Q.     So to summarize, is it your opinion that claims 30 and  
18    37 of the '857 patent are obvious in view of the prior art?

19    A.     Yes.

20    Q.     Now, I just want to shift gears briefly to your lack  
21    of written description argument.

22                 Do claims 30 and 37 of the '857 patent identify  
23    a mass amount of ibrutinib that can be included in the claim  
24    formulation?

25    A.     Well, I have to refer to the slide. So here, the two

1 claims, 30 and 37. So claim 37 depends on claim 27, and in  
2 there, there's a mass amount which is designated. If you  
3 look at below the chemical structure of the, of claim 27,  
4 you will see there an amount of about 70 milligrams to about  
5 840 milligrams is mentioned. So that is the mass amount for  
6 that.

7 As far as claim 30 is concerned, there is no  
8 mass amount, only percentages, and that means it applies to  
9 all masses, because they have not given any mass. So they  
10 say 70 percent weight by weight of the ibrutinib and that  
11 means all the strengths can be made.

12 Q. Do claims 30 and 37 of the '857 patent encompass solid  
13 tablet formulations containing 140 mgs and 560 mgs  
14 ibrutinib?

15 A. No.

16 Q. And -- well, let's take a look again. Earlier you  
17 mentioned they covered 70 to 840 mg. We'll take it step by  
18 step for claim 37.

19 A. I'm sorry. Yes.

20 Q. And so my question is: Claim 37 contain 140 and 560  
21 mgs ibrutinib?

22 A. You describe that milligram quantity in there, so it  
23 doesn't spell it out. So that is the range that is  
24 mentioned.

25 Q. And does it fall within that range?

1 A. I think 140 and 560 fall in that range.

2 Q. And earlier you mentioned that there was no range in  
3 claim 30 and so that it covered all ranges.

4 A. That's correct.

5 Q. And so would claim 30 then include a tablet  
6 formulation containing 140 mgs and 560 mgs ibrutinib?

7 A. No.

8 Q. And --

9 A. Because I don't have the mass amount.

10 Q. Okay. So let me ask the question a little  
11 differently. So you mentioned that claim 30 doesn't have  
12 the specific range of ibrutinib, the amount, and so you  
13 mentioned that it covered all ranges, mgs dosage amount?

14 A. Yes.

15 Q. And so my question is: So that would include, would  
16 that include 140 mgs or 560 mgs of ibrutinib?

17 A. Yes.

18 Q. And does claim 30 and 37 include amounts of ibrutinib  
19 other than 140 and 560 mgs?

20 A. No, they do not.

21 Q. So let's break it down again.

22 So in claim 37, where it mentions that it's a  
23 range from 70 to 840 mg ibrutinib, does that range include  
24 ranges of ibrutinib -- include amounts of ibrutinib other  
25 than 140 and 560? Well, yes. It is, it is a range from 70

1 to 840. Yes, it does.

2 Q. And with respect to claim 30, you mentioned it could  
3 cover all ranges. So it would include tablet formulations  
4 that contained ibrutinib in the amount of other than 140 and  
5 560?

6 A. Yes.

7 Q. Do you think the '857 patent as a guide, does the  
8 specification describe solid tablet formulations containing  
9 any amount of ibrutinib other than 140 or 560 mgs?

10 A. No, it doesn't indicate anything beyond those two.

11 Q. Does Example 1 disclose solid tablet formulations  
12 containing any amount of ibrutinib other than 140 or 560  
13 mgs?

14 A. No.

15 Q. Does Example 5 disclose solid tablet formulations  
16 containing any amount of ibrutinib other than 140 or 560 mgs  
17 of ibrutinib?

18 A. No.

19 Q. Before March 3rd, 2015, would a POSA have understood  
20 the '857 patent discloses solid tablet formulations  
21 containing any amount of ibrutinib other than 140 or 560  
22 mgs?

23 A. No.

24 Q. Are you aware that the '857 patent contains a photo of  
25 solid oral, of solid oral formulations?

1 A. Yes. I've seen that, yes.

2 Q. That's Figure 3 of JTX-10?

3 A. Yes.

4 Q. Does Figure 3 of the '857 patent disclose solid tablet  
5 formulations containing 140 mgs, 280 mgs, 420 mgs and 560  
6 mgs of ibrutinib?

7 A. No.

8 Q. And does the photo indicate what the contents of those  
9 tablets are, and B and E through Figure 3?

10 A. There is no description of formulation there, no.

11 Q. To summarize, based on everything you have seen and  
12 reviewed in the specification of the '857 patent, would a --  
13 does the patent, does the '857 patent demonstrate to a POSA  
14 before March 3rd, 2015, that the listed inventors were in  
15 possession of solid tablet formulations containing any  
16 amount of ibrutinib other than 140 or 560 mgs?

17 A. No.

18 MR. HANNA: I will pass the witness.

19 THE COURT: It's 5:00 o'clock, so we'll call it  
20 a day.

21 All right. Thank you, Mr. Hanna. It's  
22 5:00 o'clock. We're getting ready to call it a day. Let's  
23 just briefly talk time.

24 So, Doctor, you're excused for the day. I guess  
25 you'll be back Monday.

1                   Mr. Sipes, do you intend to cross-examine the  
2 witness?

3                   MR. SIPES: I had planned to do a little  
4 cross-examination, Your Honor.

5                   THE COURT: We'll see you then, Dr. Fassihi.  
6 We're going to begin on Monday at 8:30. All right?

7                   And the lawyers just want to stick around.  
8 Thank you, Doctor. Have a good weekend.

9                   THE WITNESS: Thank you.

10                  THE COURT: We'll see you Monday.

11                  (Witness excused.)

12                  THE COURT: And then let's talk about time. I  
13 believe there have been communications between counsel and  
14 my deputy clerk and/or case manager, and I understand that  
15 day three was broke down as follows: Three hours 11 minutes  
16 for plaintiffs. Four hours, 47 minutes for defendants. So  
17 leaving us for the first three days a total of eight hours  
18 and 42 minutes expended by, if that's the right word, by  
19 plaintiffs, 15 hours, 10 minutes by defendants.

20                  Now, I don't have the debts broken down in the  
21 specifics that I have, Ms. Clayton, but I'm going to stick  
22 to the 10.5/16.5 breakdown. Where do defendants -- unless  
23 the defendants have agreed to some alternative arrangement.

24                  MS. CLAYTON: I think that's the plan that we  
25 still have right now, Your Honor. We'll confer with Alvogen

1 over the weekend if we think we can give them more time.

2 I think on that breakdown --

3 THE COURT: Well, just keep in mind when I say  
4 that, you know, you're free to do whatever you want. You  
5 can be courteous. That's great and generous as you might  
6 want.

7 I'm going to benefit from some closing arguments  
8 and I told you all that in terms of planning for your trial.  
9 And everybody has to bear the consequences of the decisions  
10 they make about how they want to try their case. And I have  
11 already indicated, I mean, I think things could have been  
12 quicker with some of the experts. And this last thing is a  
13 great example. I mean, you know, you don't need to keep  
14 repeating questions about, to make your point when a single  
15 question often will do it.

16 So I will say based on the manner in which the  
17 evidence has been adduced, I am confident that 27 hours was  
18 more than enough for both sides to try their case,  
19 especially with Zydus' departure, and I'm very confident  
20 it's an eminently fair distribution between the two  
21 defendants to say that Alvogen was given 16.5 and defendants  
22 were given 10.5.

23 MS. CLAYTON: Your Honor, I think we've  
24 calculated thus far Sandoz has used six hours and  
25 18 minutes. Is that correct? And so whatever the



1 difference is there and I'm a little tired, so my brain is  
2 not going to be able to have me do that math quickly.  
3 Whatever the balance is, that's the time that would be  
4 attributable to Alvogen.

5 THE COURT: Okay. You guys can work that out  
6 over the weekend. We've got numbers here. If there's a  
7 dispute, you let me know, but all three parties, I will  
8 remind them that I do think I would benefit from narrowly  
9 focused closing arguments. Okay? All right.

10 MR. SIPES: And, Your Honor, you know, as the  
11 plaintiff, we've grown increasingly concerned, here we are  
12 on Friday. We have yet to start our response to their  
13 invalidity case. A lot of this is out of our hands. They  
14 tell us even after Dr. Fassihi, they have another witness to  
15 call.

16 THE COURT: Okay. But, wait. Mr. Sipes, I  
17 guess I'm confused. You have got plenty of time left to try  
18 your case. Right?

19 MR. SIPES: Yes. I just want to make sure --  
20 we're going to calculate over the weekend that there remains  
21 enough time through Wednesday afternoon.

22 THE COURT: But I calculated -- oh, because  
23 you're -- look, built into the schedule is more than  
24 27 hours per side.

25 MR. SIPES: Okay.

1 THE COURT: Right? I mean, we've got Monday,  
2 Tuesday and Wednesday scheduled. I mean, we've got, you  
3 know, 17 hours scheduled for Monday and Tuesday. I mean,  
4 the defense only has -- I mean, ballpark today, do you think  
5 they've used six today, five?

6 MR. SIPES: That's probably about right.

7 THE COURT: So that means that at the end of  
8 today, they only have, you know, five-and-a-half to six  
9 hours or so left for their entire case.

10 MR. SIPES: Right. All right, Your Honor. I  
11 got it. We look forward to starting our case. Thank you,  
12 Your Honor.

13 THE COURT: Okay. Anything else?

14 MR. HANNA: Yes. I have exhibits I'd like to  
15 enter in for Dr. Swift yesterday.

16 THE COURT: Why don't you do that, confer over  
17 the weekend, make sure it's all streamlined. That's an  
18 example, if you all agree to it, just give me something in  
19 writing. We will just put it in the record in evidence and  
20 save time.

21 MR. HANNA: Yes, Your Honor.

22 MS. CLAYTON: Sounds good, Your Honor.

23 THE COURT: And, Ms. Clayton, I might be  
24 inferring too much. If you are afraid of time, you let me  
25 know. I do think you've not unduly taken time and I don't

1       want your client to be prejudiced.

2                   MS. CLAYTON:  I think with the time we have  
3       left, Your Honor, it won't be a problem, but if I become  
4       concerned, I will let you know.

5                   THE COURT:  Anything else?  Everybody have a  
6       good weekend.  I will see you Monday morning.  Thank you.

7                   MR. SIPES:  Thank you.

8                   MS. CLAYTON:  Thank you.

9                   (Court recessed at 5:10 p.m.)

10                               -   -   -

11

12

13

14

15

16

17

18

19

20

21

22

23

24

25